



POCKET GUIDE TO
SOUTH AFRICA 2010/11



Pocket Guide to South Africa 2010/11

Eighth edition

Published by Government Communications (GCIS)

Private Bag X745, Pretoria, 0001, South Africa

Tel: +27 12 314-2911

Fax: +27 12 323-0557

Website: www.gcis.gov.za

ISBN: 978-0-621-39805-2

Managing editor: Nina Bhaktawar

Editor: Delien Burger

Assistant editors: Refilwe Thobega and Antonia Vermeulen

Editorial support: Ongezwa Manyathi

Picture researchers: Elizabeth Mpila and Ongezwa Manyathi

Photographs supplied by: Africa Media Online; Chamber of Mines; Delien Burger; Department of International Relations and Cooperation; Gautrain; GCIS Photo Studio; H Coetzee; Mediaclub South Africa; Pictuernet; Roger Bosch; Shaun Harris; Lissele Botha and Yolande Dednam.

Cover design: Rachel Moloi

Design and layout: Rachel Moloi

Printed and bound in South Africa by Paarl Media

The editorial staff has taken all reasonable care to ensure correctness of facts and statistics. However, any person requiring confirmation of any data in the *Pocket Guide to South Africa*, or more detailed and specific information, should consult the relevant department/institution. This information is also available at www.gcis.gov.za. Unless otherwise specified, information contained in this Pocket Guide was the latest available as at October 2010.

Contents

Foreword by President Jacob Zuma	iii
South Africa at a glance	v
2010 FIFA World Cup™	1
History	9
South Africa's people	15
Government	19
Provinces	31
Economy	47
Finance	59
Doing business in South Africa	69
International relations and cooperation	79
Communications	91
Transport	101
Agriculture, forestry and fisheries	111
Rural development	123
Mineral resources	131
Energy and water	139
Education	151
Science and technology	159
Human settlements	169
Police, defence and intelligence	173
Justice and correctional services	283
Social development	197
Environment	205
Arts and culture	215
Tourism	225
Health	239
Sport and recreation	245
Reading list	257



FOREWORD

2010 has been a remarkable year for our country.

Seven years ago, when we won the rights to host the FIFA 2010 World Cup™ tournament, the task seemed too huge. Many wondered if an African country could make a success of the biggest sporting event in the world. Despite all the doomsaying, South Africa and our home continent triumphed in 2010. According to FIFA, more than three million spectators attended the 64 matches of the tournament. This was the third-highest aggregate attendance behind the 1994 FIFA World Cup in the United States, and the 2006 FIFA World Cup in Germany.

This figure excludes the millions of people who watched World Cup games at fan fests, fan parks and public viewing areas across the country, and in various cities around the world.

Government recorded that more than 1,4 million foreigners visited the country during the tournament. The systems we put in place to control the movement of people worked seamlessly and efficiently. Our stadiums were described as world-class.

South Africa has demonstrated that it has the infrastructure and capability to warrant serious investment consideration. The real pride, however, for me and for the nation, is that the World Cup tournament revealed that South Africans are capable of working together in unity.

This *Pocket Guide to South Africa 2010/11* documents countless examples of the various policies and initiatives that were undertaken by government, in partnership with the people of South

FOREWORD

Africa, not only to meet its World Cup commitments, but also to fulfil its electoral mandate and improve the lives of all South Africans in the long term.

Towards the latter objective, much effort in government during 2010 was dedicated into organising and shifting government onto a new plateau of efficiency and accountability. I believe that we have clearly identified the priorities that require our attention through the 12 outcomes:

- an improved quality of basic education
- a long and healthy life for all South Africans
- all South Africans should be safe and feel safe
- decent employment through inclusive growth
- a skilled and capable workforce to support an inclusive growth path
- an efficient, competitive and responsive economic infrastructure network
- vibrant, equitable, sustainable rural communities with food security for all
- sustainable human settlements and an improved quality of household life
- a responsive, accountable, effective and efficient local government system
- environmental assets and natural resources that are well protected and enhanced
- a better Africa and a better world as a result of South Africa's contribution to global relations
- an efficient and development-oriented public service and an empowered, fair and inclusive citizenship.

A big part of making the outcomes a reality lies in escalating the extent to which departments are accountable for their delivery areas.

The performance monitoring and evaluation systems that have been put in place during 2010 will continue to be built upon so that the work of government towards achieving these outcomes is consistently tracked. Through this monumental year 2010, we have created a legacy for a nation that strives, believes and rises up to any challenge, together.

I have no doubt that we will continue on this exciting journey to greater things in 2011.



Jacob Zuma
President of the Republic of South Africa
February 2011



SOUTH AFRICA AT A GLANCE

Land surface area

1 220 813 km²

Key economic sectors

Mining services and transport, energy, manufacturing, tourism and agriculture.

Population

Total	49 320 500
Male	23 868 700
Female	25 451 800
0 – 14 years	15 500 700
15 – 34 years	18 447 000
Households	13,8 million
Household size	Average 3,6 persons

Official languages

English, isiZulu, isiXhosa, isiNdebele, Afrikaans, siSwati, Sesotho sa Leboa, Sesotho, Setswana, Tshivenda and Xitsonga.

Government

Constitutional multiparty democracy, three spheres (local, provincial and national).

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2010/11
SOUTH AFRICA AT A GLANCE

Capitals

Pretoria (administrative); Cape Town (legislative); Bloemfontein (judicial). The Constitutional Court is located in Johannesburg.

Currency

Rand (ZAR) – 100 cents equals one rand.

Time

GMT +2 hours

Provinces

Eastern Cape, Free State, Gauteng, KwaZulu-Natal, Limpopo, Mpumalanga, Northern Cape, North West, Western Cape.

Transportation

Excellent roads, rail and air facilities (both domestic and international).

Telecommunications

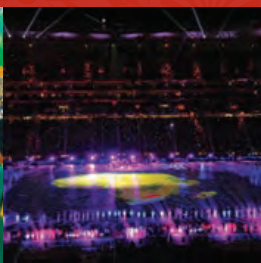
World-class infrastructure. Internet access is widely available. There are five mobile (cellular) networks.

Health

Top-quality care is available throughout the country, although basic in rural areas. Inoculations are only required for those travelling from yellow-fever areas. Malaria precautions are necessary in some areas.

Source: *Millennium Development Goals Country Report 2010*

For further information on South Africa, visit
www.southafrica.info and www.gov.za



2010 FIFA World Cup

We did it!





South Africa hosted the first African World Cup from 11 June to 11 July 2010. Hosting the tournament acted as a catalyst for expanding the country's infrastructure base, skills development, employment creation and economic growth.

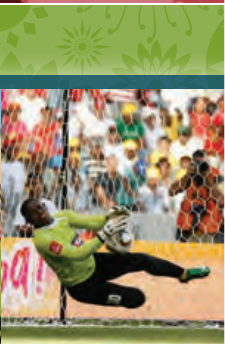




A total of 3.18 million spectators attended the 64 matches of the tournament, which is the third-highest aggregate attendance behind the United States in 1994 and Germany in 2006.



The games...





Thousands of jobs were created for the construction of the World Cup stadiums. Construction workers on these stadiums were given extensive skills training, which will enable them to meet the much needed demand for skilled workers on other construction projects post-2010.



During the duration of the tournament, billions of viewers around the world watched the World Cup games and opening and closing ceremonies.



The six new stadiums that were built for the 2010 FIFA World Cup provide South Africa with a number of world-class sporting facilities.



The success of the tournament showed the power of sport and recreation in nation-building as well as economic and social development.





HISTORY

Modern humans have lived in what is today South Africa for over 100 000 years, and their ancestors for some 3,3 million years.

Some 2 000 years ago, the Khoekhoen (the Hottentots of early European terminology) were pastoralists who had settled mostly along the coast, while the San (the Bushmen) were hunter-gatherers spread across the region. At this time, Bantu-speaking agro-pastoralists began arriving in southern Africa, spreading from the eastern lowlands to the Highveld.

At several archaeological sites there is evidence of sophisticated political and material cultures.

European contact

The first European settlement in southern Africa was established by the Dutch East India Company in Table Bay (Cape Town) in 1652. Created to supply passing ships, the colony grew quickly as Dutch farmers settled to grow produce. Shortly after the establishment of the colony, slaves were imported from East Africa, Madagascar and the East Indies.

Conflict

From the 1770s, colonists came into contact and inevitable conflict with Bantu-speaking chiefdoms some 800 km east of Cape Town. A century of intermittent warfare ensued during which the colonists gained ascendancy over the isiXhosa-speaking chiefdoms.

In the 1820s, the celebrated Zulu leader, Shaka, established sway over a vast area of south-east Africa.

As splinter groups from Shaka's Zulu nation conquered and absorbed communities in their path, the region experienced a fundamental disruption. Substantial states, such as Moshoe-shoe's Lesotho and other Sotho-Tswana chiefdoms were established, partly for reasons of defence.

This temporary disruption of life on the Highveld served to facilitate the expansion northwards of the original Dutch settlers' descendants, the Boer Voortrekkers, from the 1830s.

Occupation

In 1806, Britain reoccupied the Cape. As the colony prospered, the political rights of the various races were guaranteed, with slavery being abolished in 1838.

Throughout the 1800s, the boundaries of European influence spread eastwards. From the port of Durban, Natal



settlers pushed northwards, further and further into the land of the Zulu.

From the mid-1800s, the Voortrekkers coalesced in two land-locked white-ruled republics, the South African Republic (Transvaal) and the Orange Free State.

The mineral revolution

The discovery of diamonds north of the Cape in the 1860s brought tens of thousands of people to the area around Kimberley.

In 1871, Britain annexed the diamond fields. Independent African chiefdoms were subjugated and incorporated.

Gold

The discovery of the Witwatersrand goldfields in 1886 was a turning point in the history of South Africa. The demand for franchise rights for English-speaking immigrants working on the new goldfields was the pretext Britain used to go to war with the Transvaal and Orange Free State in 1899.

The Boers initially inflicted some heavy defeats on the British but eventually the might of imperial Britain proved too strong for the guerilla bands and the war ended in 1902. Britain's scorched-earth policy included farm burnings and the setting up of concentration camps for non-combatants in which some 26 000 Boer women and children died.

The incarceration of black (including coloured) people in racially segregated camps has only recently been acknowledged in historical accounts of the war.

Union and opposition

In 1910, the Union of South Africa was created out of the Cape, Natal, Transvaal and Free State. It was to be essentially a white union.

Black opposition was inevitable, and the African National Congress (ANC) was founded in 1912 to protest the exclusion of black people from power. In 1921, the Communist Party came into being at a time of heightened militancy.

More discriminatory legislation was enacted. Meanwhile, Afrikaner nationalism, fuelled by job losses arising from a worldwide recession, was on the march.

HISTORY

The rise of apartheid

In 1948, the pro-Afrikaner National Party (NP) came to power with the ideology of apartheid, an even more rigorous and authoritarian approach than the previous segregationist policies.

While white South Africa was cementing its power, black opposition politics were evolving. In 1943, a younger, more determined political grouping came to the fore with the launch of the ANC Youth League, a development which was to foster the leadership of figures such as Nelson Mandela, Oliver Tambo and Walter Sisulu.

Repression

In 1961, the NP Government under Prime Minister HF Verwoerd declared South Africa a republic after winning a whites-only referendum.

A new concern with racial purity was apparent in various legislation and residential segregation was enforced.

Separate development

At a time when much of Africa was on the verge of independence, the South African government was devising its policy of separate development, dividing the African population into artificial ethnic “nations”, each with its own “homeland” and the prospect of “independence”.

Forced removals from “white” areas affected some 3,5 million people, and vast rural slums were created in the homelands.

In 1949, the ANC adopted its Programme of Action, expressing the renewed militancy of the 1940s.

The programme embodied a rejection of white domination and a call for action in the form of protests, strikes and demonstrations.

Defiance

The Defiance Campaign of the early 1950s carried mass mobilisation to new heights under the banner of non-violent resistance to the pass laws. In 1955, the Freedom Charter was drawn up at the Congress of the People in Soweto. The charter enunciated the principles of the struggle, binding the movement to a culture of human rights and non-racialism.

Soon the mass-based organisations, including the ANC and the Pan-Africanist Congress (PAC), were banned. Matters came to a head at Sharpeville in March 1960 when 69 PAC anti-pass demonstrators were killed. A state of emergency was imposed, and detention without trial was introduced.

Struggle days

Leaders of the black political organisations at this time either went into exile or were arrested. In this climate, the ANC and PAC abandoned their long-standing commitment to non-violent resistance and turned to armed struggle.

Top leaders still inside the country, including members of the ANC's newly formed military wing, Umkhonto we Sizwe (Spear of the Nation), were arrested in 1963. At the Rivonia Trial, eight ANC leaders, including Nelson Mandela, convicted of sabotage (instead of treason, the original charge), were sentenced to life imprisonment.

The resurgence of resistance politics in the early 1970s was dramatic. The year 1976 marked the beginning of a sustained anti-apartheid revolt. In June, school pupils in Soweto rose up against apartheid education, followed by youth uprisings all around the country. Strong, legal vehicles for the democratic forces tested the state, whose response until then had been invariably heavy-handed repression.

Reform

Shaken by the scale of protest and opposition, the government embarked on a series of limited reforms in the early 1980s.

In 1983, the Constitution was reformed to allow the coloured and Indian minorities limited participation in separate and subordinate houses of parliament.

In 1986, the pass laws were scrapped. The international community strengthened its support for the anti-apartheid cause.

Mass resistance increasingly challenged the apartheid state, which resorted to intensified repression accompanied by eventual recognition that apartheid could not be sustained.

Apartheid's last days

In February 1990, President FW de Klerk announced the unbanning of the liberation movements and the release of political prisoners, notably Nelson Mandela.

Democracy at last

After a difficult negotiation process, South Africa held its first democratic election in April 1994 under an interim Constitution.

The ANC emerged with a 62% majority. South Africa was divided into nine new provinces in place of the four provinces and 10 homelands that existed previously. In terms of the interim Constitution, the NP and Inkatha Freedom Party (IFP) participated in a government of national unity under President Mandela, South Africa's first democratically elected president.

The ANC-led Government embarked on a programme to promote the reconstruction and development of the country and its institutions.

The second democratic election, in 1999, saw the ANC increasing its majority to a point just short of two-thirds of the total vote.

In the election in April 2004, the ANC won the national vote with 69,68%. 27 April 2004 saw the swearing in of President Thabo Mbeki and the celebration of 10 Years of Freedom attended by heads of state and government delegations from across the world.

In 2008, Kgalema Motlanthe became President following the recalling of President Mbeki.

South Africa held national and provincial elections on 22 April 2009. About 76% of registered voters took part in the election. The results for the top five parties were as follows: the ANC achieved 65,9%; the Democratic Alliance 16,6%, the newly-formed Congress of the People 7,4%; the IFP 4,5%; and the Independent Democrats 0,9% of the votes cast. Jacob Zuma was inaugurated as President of South Africa on 9 May 2009.

A significant milestone was the hosting of the 2010 FIFA Soccer World Cup™. The event will leave a lasting legacy, not just for South Africa but for Africa as a whole.

The Government spent about R40 billion on infrastructure projects, and billions more on upgrading roads and airports. Improvements in public transport, security, investment and tourism have already been shown to benefit the people of our country. The hosting of the tournament also resulted in job creation.

South Africans demonstrated an explosion of national pride and embraced each other, making the tournament a powerful nation-building tool.



SOUTH AFRICA'S PEOPLE



Pocket Guide to South Africa 2010/11

SOUTH AFRICA'S PEOPLE

People

According to Statistics South Africa's (Stats SA) *Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2010*, there were 49 991 300 people in South Africa in July 2010. The South African population consists of the following groups: the Nguni (comprising the Zulu, Xhosa, Ndebele and Swazi people); Sotho-Tswana, who include the Southern, Northern and Western Sotho (Tswana people); Tsonga; Venda; Afrikaners; English; coloureds; Indians; and those who have immigrated to South Africa from the rest of Africa, Europe and Asia and who maintain a strong cultural identity. A few members of the Khoi and the San also live in South Africa.

Languages

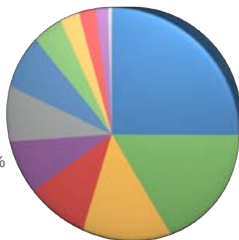
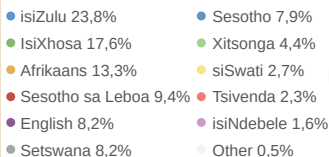
According to the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996, everyone has the right to use the language and to participate in the cultural life of their choice, but no one may do so in a manner that is inconsistent with any provision of the Bill of Rights. Each person also has the right to instruction in his or her language of choice where this is reasonably practicable.

Official languages

The diversity of the unique cultures of South Africa means that there are 11 official languages.

These are English, Afrikaans, isiXhosa, isiZulu, isiNdebele, Sesotho sa Leboa, Sesotho, Setswana, siSwati, Tshivenda and Xitsonga. The Constitution also requires the Pan South African Language Board to promote the use of the Khoi, Nama and San languages, and Sign Language.

Mother tongues



Source: Census 2001

Estimates by population group and gender

Population group	Male		Female		Total	
	Number	% of total population	Number	% of total population	Number	% of total population
African	19 314 500	79,4	20 368 100	79,4	39 682 600	79,4
Coloured	2 124 900	8,7	2 299 200	9	4 424 100	8,8
Indian/Asian	646 600	2,7	653 300	2,5	1 299 900	2,6
White	2 243 000	9,2	2 341 700	9,1	4 584 700	9,2
Total	24 329 000	100	25 662 300	100	49 991 300	100

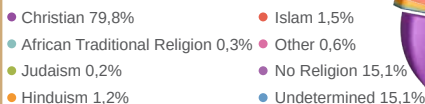
Source: Statistics South Africa, *Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2010*

Although English is the mother tongue of only 8,2% of the population, it is the language most widely understood, and the second language of the majority of South Africans. However, government is committed to promoting all the official languages.

Religion

According to the Constitution, everyone has the right to freedom of conscience, religion, thought, belief and opinion. Almost 80% of South Africa's population follows the Christian faith. Other major religious groups are the Hindus, Muslims, Jews and Buddhists. A minority of South Africa's population do not belong to any of the major religions, but regard themselves as traditionalists of no specific religious affiliation.

Religious affiliation



Source: Census 2001





GOVERNMENT



Pocket Guide to South Africa 2010/11

GOVERNMENT

Government's outcomes approach is embedded in and a direct resultant of the electoral mandate.

Five priority areas were identified: decent work and sustainable livelihoods, education, health, rural development, food security and land reform and the fight against crime and corruption. These translated into 12 outcomes to create a better life for all:

- an improved quality of basic education
- a long and healthy life for all South Africans
- all South Africans should be safe and feel safe
- decent employment through inclusive growth
- a skilled and capable workforce to support an inclusive growth path
- an efficient, competitive and responsive economic infrastructure network
- vibrant, equitable, sustainable rural communities with food security for all
- sustainable human settlements and an improved quality of household life
- a responsive, accountable, effective and efficient local government system
- environmental assets and natural resources that are well protected and enhanced
- a better Africa and a better world as a result of South Africa's contributions to global relations
- an efficient and development-oriented public service and an empowered, fair and inclusive citizenship.

In 2010, performance agreements for the outcomes were signed between President Jacob Zuma and Cabinet ministers. Delivery agreements will further unpack each outcome.

The Department for Performance Monitoring and Evaluation in The Presidency will facilitate the process of regular reporting and monitoring of progress against the agreed outputs and targets in the delivery agreements. This process will foster an understanding of how the various spheres of government are working together to achieve the outcomes.

The Presidency, March 2011

President: Jacob Zuma

Deputy President: Kgalema Motlanthe

The Constitution

The Constitution is the supreme law of the country. No other law or government action may supersede its provisions.

The Preamble to the Constitution states that its aims are to:

- heal the divisions of the past and establish a society based on democratic values, social justice and fundamental human rights
- improve the quality of life of all citizens and free the potential of each person
- lay the foundations for a democratic and open society in which government is based on the will of the people, and in which every citizen is equally protected by law
- build a united and democratic South Africa that is able to take its rightful place as a sovereign state in the family of nations.

Government

Government consists of national, provincial and local spheres. The powers of the legislature, executive and courts are separate.

Parliament

Parliament consists of the National Assembly and the National Council of Provinces (NCOP). Parliamentary sittings are open to the public. Several measures have been implemented to make Parliament more accessible and accountable. The National Assembly consists of no fewer than 350 and no more than 400 members, elected through a system of proportional representation for a five-year term. It elects the President and scrutinises the executive.

National Council of Provinces

The NCOP consists of 54 permanent members and 36 special delegates, and aims to represent provincial interests in the national sphere of government.

The Presidency

The President is the head of state and leads the Cabinet. He or she is elected by the National Assembly from among its members, and leads the country in the interest of national unity, in accordance with the Constitution and the law.

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2010/11

GOVERNMENT

There are two ministers in The Presidency, one responsible for the National Planning Commission (NPC) and the other for Monitoring and Evaluation as well as Administration.

The NPC is responsible for strategic planning for the country to ensure one national plan to which all spheres of government would adhere.

The *Green Paper on National Strategic Planning* sets out the rationale for planning and the institutional structures, processes and outputs of the national planning process.

A monitoring and evaluation competency in The Presidency was also created to monitor and evaluate the performance of government in all three spheres.

The Deputy President

The President appoints the Deputy President from among the members of the National Assembly.

Cabinet

Cabinet consists of the President, as head of the Cabinet, the Deputy President and ministers. The President appoints the Deputy President and ministers, assigns their powers and functions and may dismiss them. No more than two ministers may be appointed from outside the National Assembly.

Seats in the National Assembly, following the election in April 2009

African National Congress	264
Democratic Alliance	67
Congress of the People	30
Inkatha Freedom Party	18
Independent Democrats	4
Freedom Front Plus	4
United Democratic Party	4
African Christian Democratic Party	3
United Christian Democratic Party	2
African People's Convention	1
Azanian People's Liberation Organisation	1
Minority Front	1
Pan Africanist Congress	1

Premiers, as at January 2011

Province	Premier
Eastern Cape	Noxolo Kiviet
Free State	Elias Sekgobelo Magashule
Gauteng	Nomvula Mokonyane
KwaZulu-Natal	Dr Zweli Mkhize
Limpopo	Cassel Mathale
Mpumalanga	David Mabuza
Northern Cape	Hazel Jenkins
North West	Thandi Modise
Western Cape	Helen Zille

Provincial government

Each of the nine provinces has its own legislature of 30 to 80 members. They elect the premiers who head the executive councils.

Provinces may have legislative and executive powers concurrently with the national sphere, over:

- agriculture
- casinos, horse racing and gambling
- cultural affairs
- education at all levels, except university and university of technology education
- environment and nature conservation
- health, housing and welfare
- language policy
- police services, public transport, traffic regulation and vehicle licensing
- regional planning and development and urban and rural development.

Provinces are also responsible for promoting trade, investment and tourism.

They have exclusive competency over:

- abattoirs
- ambulance services
- liquor licences
- museums other than national museums
- provincial planning
- provincial cultural matters

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2010/11

GOVERNMENT

- provincial recreation
- provincial roads and traffic.

Traditional leadership

Chapter 11 of the Constitution states that the institution, status and roles of traditional leadership, according to customary law, are recognised, subject to the Constitution.

Government remains committed to strengthening the institution of traditional leadership and appreciates the role it plays in society.

The Department of Traditional Affairs was established in April 2010 to underline the critical focus on traditional leadership.

Local government

Local governments are not merely instruments of service delivery, but are expected to act as key agents for economic development.

Municipalities

There are 283 municipalities focused on growing local economies and providing infrastructure and services. The Constitution provides for three categories of municipalities:

- metropolitan municipalities
- local municipalities
- district areas or municipalities.

South Africa has nine metropolitan municipalities, namely:

- Buffalo City (East London)
- City of Cape Town
- Ekurhuleni Metropolitan Municipality (East Rand)
- City of eThekweni (Durban)
- City of Johannesburg
- Mangaung Municipality (Bloemfontein)
- Msunduzi Municipality (Pietermaritzburg)
- Nelson Mandela Metropolitan Municipality (Port Elizabeth)
- City of Tshwane (Pretoria).

Municipalities enjoy significant powers to corporatise their services. Legislation provides for them to report on their performance, and for residents to compare this performance with that of other municipalities.

Cabinet ministers and deputy ministers, as at January 2011

Portfolio	Minister	Deputy Minister
Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries	Tina Joemat-Pettersson	Dr Pieter Mulder
Arts and Culture	Paul Mashatile	Dr Joe Phaahla
Basic Education	Angie Motshekga	Enver Surty
Communications	Roy Padayachie	Obed Bapela
Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs	Sicelo Shiceka	Yunus Carrim
Correctional Services	Nosiviwe Mapisa-Nqakula	Adv Ngoako Ramatlhodi
Defence and Military Veterans	Lindiwe Sisulu	Thabang Makwetla
Economic Development	Ebrahim Patel	Enoch Godongwana
Energy	Dipuo Peters	Barbara Thompson
Finance	Pravin Gordhan	Nhlanhla Nene
Health	Dr Aaron Motsoaledi	Dr Gwen Ramokgopa
Higher Education and Training	Dr Blade Nzimande	Prof. Hlengiwe Mkhize
Home Affairs	Dr Nkosazana Dlamini Zuma	Fatima Chohan
Human Settlements	Tokyo Sexwale	Zoliswa Kota-Fredericks
International Relations and Cooperation	Maite Nkoana-Mashabane	Marius Fransman Ebrahim Ebrahim
Justice and Constitutional Development	Jeff Radebe	Andries Nel
Labour	Mildred Oliphant	-
Mineral Resources	Susan Shabangu	Godfrey Oliphant
Police	Nathi Mthethwa	Makhotso Soty
Public Enterprises	Malusi Gigaba	Benedict Martins
Public Service and Administration	Richard Baloyi	Ayanda Dlodlo
Public Works	Gwen Mahlangu-Nkabinde	Hendrietta Bogopane-Zulu
Rural Development and Land Reform	Gugile Nkwinti	Thembelani Nxesi

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2010/11

GOVERNMENT

Cabinet ministers and deputy ministers, as at January 2011

Portfolio	Minister	Deputy Minister
Science and Technology	Naledi Pandor	Derek Hanekom
Social Development	Bathabile Dlamini	Maria Ntuli
Sport and Recreation	Fikile Mbalula	Gert Oosthuizen
State Security	Dr Siyabonga Cwele	-
The Presidency National Planning Commission	Trevor Manuel	-
The Presidency Performance Monitoring, Evaluation and Administration	Collins Chabane	Dina Pule
Tourism	Marthinus van Schalkwyk	Thokozile Xasa
Trade and Industry	Dr Rob Davies	Elizabeth Thabethe Thandi Tobias-Pokolo
Transport	Sibusiso Ndebele	Jeremy Cronin
Water and Environmental Affairs	Edna Molewa	Rejoice Mabudafhasi
Women, Children and People with Disabilities	Lulu Xingwana	-

Local Government Turnaround Strategy

In December 2009, Cabinet approved a turnaround strategy for local government. This is expected to ensure that local government has the correct management, administrative and technical skills.

The strategy has been distilled into a local government 10-point plan, which includes:

- improving the quantity and quality of basic services for all people in terms of water, sanitation, electricity, waste management, roads and disaster management
- enhancing the municipal contribution to job creation and sustainable livelihoods through local economic developments, utilising cooperatives in every ward
- deepening democracy through a refined ward committee system that will be based on the will of the people

The Presidential Hotline enables citizens to escalate their queries and suggestions to the President's Office.

In the first year of its inception, the hotline received 72 299 calls. The service resolves about 400 cases per week.

The public liaison contact details are: telephone: 17737, fax: 086 681 0987 and e-mail: president@po.gov.za.

The service is toll-free.



- ensuring that municipalities have and implement reliable and credible integrated development plans
- building and strengthening the administrative, institutional and financial capabilities of municipalities
- creating a single window of coordination, support, monitoring and intervention to deal with uncoordinated interaction by other spheres of government with municipalities, including unfunded mandates
- rooting out corruption, nepotism and maladministration in local government
- developing a coherent and cohesive system of governance and a more equitable intergovernmental fiscal system
- developing and strengthening a stable system of municipalities
- restoring the institutional integrity of municipalities.

Municipal Infrastructure Grant (MIG)

The MIG, introduced in 2004/05, is the largest infrastructure transfer programme administered by the Department of Cooperative Governance.

The MIG funds are distributed to all municipalities based on a formula that accounts for existing backlogs in service delivery as well as the functions assigned to individual municipalities.

In February 2010, the local government equitable share received a further R6,7 billion to support municipalities to cushion poor households against the rising cost of electricity and water. An additional R2,5 billion was allocated for the MIG.

Total allocations to municipalities rose from R55 billion in 2009/10 to R78 billion in 2012/13.

Communicating with the people

The Government Communication and Information System (GCIS) is primarily responsible for facilitating communication between government and citizens. A high premium is placed

GOVERNMENT

on communication that emphasises direct dialogue, especially with people in disadvantaged areas.

The GCIS is responsible for maintaining government's website (www.gov.za), which includes both an information portal for general information about government and a services portal that is a source of information about all the services offered by national government.

The GCIS leads or is involved in various communication partnerships.

The GCIS publishes, among other things, the *South Africa Yearbook*, the *Pocket Guide to South Africa* and *Vuk'uzenzele*. It has also introduced a magazine for public-sector managers.

The following entities report to the GCIS:

- the International Marketing Council (IMC)
- the Media Development and Diversity Agency.

International Marketing Council

The IMC of South Africa was established in 2000 as a public-private partnership aimed at creating a positive, united image for South Africa to give the country a strategic advantage in an increasingly competitive marketplace.



The IMC's threefold mission is to:

- articulate a brand for South Africa, which positions the country to attract tourism, trade and investment, as well as realise international relations objectives
- establish an integrated approach within government and the private sector towards the international marketing of South Africa
- build national support for Brand South Africa.

The Public Service

By the end of March 2010, the Public Service had 1 272 311 people in its employ (including members of the South African National Defence Force). Of these employees, 63% were attached to the social services sector (health, social development, education and home affairs), followed by 20% in the criminal justice sector.

The toll-free, 24-hour National Public Service Anti-Corruption Hotline facility (0800 701 701) was established for the reporting of fraud and corruption.



In August 2010, the Department of Home Affairs was working on rolling out an online Identity Document (ID) verification system expected to crack down on fraudulent documentation.

The project will allow the South African Social Security Agency, banks, insurance companies and the retail sector, real-time access to the Home Affairs National Identification System (Hanis) for the verification of the identity of prospective and current clients.

The Hanis stores South African citizens' ID numbers, fingerprints and photos.

Accessing the Hanis will equip these sectors with the ability to conduct on-the-spot verification of the fingerprints of a client against the information stored in the system.



Batho Pele remains government's leading campaign to achieve the desired crucial transformation of the hearts and minds of public servants. This is a public-service culture reorientation programme that is aimed at aligning the behaviour and attitudes of public servants towards the practice of Batho Pele ethos.

To intensify the implementation and impact of this policy, the Minister of Public Service and Administration, Mr Richard Baloyi, launched the Batho Pele Impact Assessment in 2010.

This will enhance partnerships, collaboration and better coordination towards the implementation of Batho Pele and intervene decisively and coherently in the economy and society to address social and economic developmental goals.

The Batho Pele ("People First") policy promotes integrated and seamless service delivery. Various projects are being delivered through Batho Pele. These include:

- government information and services websites
- modernising government, for example, through the Centre for Public Service Innovation
- creating new service-delivery mechanisms such as Thusong service centres and one-stop centres
- the Government Information Technology Officers' Council to alert government when and how to intervene to improve service delivery
- active auditing of national and provincial departments' anti-corruption capabilities by the Public Service Commission.

Home affairs

The Department of Home Affairs has a network of offices in all provinces. Where the establishment of fixed offices is

GOVERNMENT

not warranted, mobile offices or units service such areas regularly.

In 2010, President Jacob Zuma and the Minister of Home Affairs, Dr Nkosazana Dlamini Zuma, launched the National Population Registration Campaign aimed at the registration of children within 30 days of birth and encouraging 16-year-olds and above to apply for identity documents in line with the law.

Permanent residence

The department is responsible for admitting people suitable for immigration, such as skilled workers who are in short supply locally.

Applications are particularly encouraged from industrialists and other entrepreneurs who wish to relocate their existing concerns or establish new concerns in South Africa.

Those wishing to enter the country as work seekers or for study purposes must have the relevant permit, which is issued outside the country.

Independent Electoral Commission (IEC)

The IEC is a permanent body created by the Constitution to promote and safeguard democracy in South Africa. Although publicly funded and accountable to Parliament, the commission is independent of government. Its immediate task is the impartial management of free and fair elections at all levels of government.

Local government elections were held on 18 May 2011.

Public Administration Leadership and Management Academy (Palama)

Palama (Sesotho for “ascend”), as the public-sector training academy, has a central role to play in building the capacity of the public sector to perform more effectively.

Palama’s offerings address the practical management competencies required for improved service delivery in all spheres of government.

Special courses are developed and customised to meet departmental-specific training needs.



PROVINCES

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2010/11

PROVINCES

South Africa has nine provinces. Each province has its own legislature, premier and executive council.

The country has common boundaries with Namibia, Botswana and Zimbabwe, while Mozambique and Swaziland lie to the north-east. Completely enclosed by South African territory in the south-east is the mountain kingdom of Lesotho.

Eastern Cape

The Eastern Cape, a land of undulating hills, endless sandy beaches, majestic mountain ranges and deep green forests, is the second-largest of the nine provinces.

The region boasts remarkable natural diversity, ranging from the dry, desolate Great Karoo to the lush forests of the Wild Coast and the Keiskamma Valley; the fertile Langkloof, renowned for its rich apple harvests; and the mountainous southern Drakensberg region at Elliot.

A massive business process outsourcing (BPO) park, which is expected to create employment for about 1 500 people, was opened in the Coega Industrial Development Zone in March 2010. This is the first facility of this kind that was built in the Eastern Cape. The BPO park is about 18 900 m² and cost about R173 million.

The province is serviced by airports situated in Port Elizabeth, East London, Mthatha and Bhisho.



Eastern Cape

Capital:	Bhisho
Principal languages:	
isiXhosa	83,4%
Afrikaans	9,3%
English	3,6%
Population:	6 743 800 (<i>Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2010</i>)
Area (km ²):	169 580
% of total area:	13,9%
% share of total population:	13,5%

Source: Statistics South Africa



2010 FIFA World Cup™



Stadium: Nelson Mandela Bay Stadium, Port Elizabeth

Capacity: 50 000

Matches played:

12 June	Korea Republic – Greece	Score: 2 – 0
15 June	Côte d'Ivoire – Portugal	Score: 0 – 0
18 June	Germany – Serbia	Score: 0 – 1
21 June	Chile – Switzerland	Score: 1 – 0
23 June	Slovenia – England	Score: 0 – 1
26 June	Uruguay – South Korea	Score: 2 – 1
2 July	Netherlands – Brazil	Score: 2 – 1
10 July	Uruguay – Germany	Score: 2 – 3



Free State

The Free State, a province of wide horizons and blue skies, farmland, mountains, goldfields and widely dispersed towns, lies in the heart of South Africa. Between the Vaal River in the north and the Orange River in the south, this immense rolling prairie stretches as far as the eye can see.

The capital, Bloemfontein, houses the Supreme Court of Appeal, a leading university and some top schools.

Mining, particularly gold, is the biggest employer, followed by manufacturing. A gold reef of over 400 km stretches across Gauteng and the Free State. The province accounts for 30% of South Africa's total gold production, and contributes significant amounts of silver, bituminous coal and diamonds.

The Free State Provincial Government aims to develop an eco-park project in the Mangaung area, which will represent the various biomes in the province. The project is expected to

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2010/11

PROVINCES



Free State

Capital:	Bloemfontein
Principal languages:	
Sesotho	64,4%
Afrikaans	11,9%
isiXhosa	9,1%
Population:	2 824 500 (<i>Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2010</i>)
Area (km ²):	129 480
% of total area:	10,6%

Source: Statistics South Africa



2010 FIFA World Cup™



Stadium: Free State Stadium, Bloemfontein

Capacity: 45 000

Matches played:

14 June	Japan – Cameroon	Score: 1 – 0
17 June	Greece – Nigeria	Score: 2 – 1
20 June	Slovakia – Paraguay	Score: 0 – 2
22 June	France – South Africa	Score: 1 – 2
25 June	Switzerland – Honduras	Score: 0 – 0
27 June	Germany – England	Score: 4 – 1



generate 120 jobs during construction and 20 full-time positions after it is completed. A cultural village with 40 people permanently living there, is planned for a later stage. The tourism and educational opportunities that will be created is expected to encourage investors and developers to also get involved in the future developments planned for this project.

Gauteng

Gauteng is the economic centre of South Africa and the continent, responsible for over 34,8% of the country's total gross domestic product (GDP), although it is the smallest of South Africa's nine provinces. Gauteng is also the financial-services capital of Africa, as more than 70 foreign banks have their head offices in the province, as do at least the same number of South African banks, stockbrokers and insurance giants. Financial and business services, logistics, manufacturing, property, telecommunications and trade are some of the most important economic sectors.

Johannesburg, nicknamed "Egoli" (Place of Gold), is the capital of the province and a city of contrasts. South of Johannesburg is Soweto.

Most overseas visitors enter South Africa via OR Tambo International Airport.



Gauteng

Capital:	Johannesburg
Principal languages:	
isiZulu	21,5%
Afrikaans	14,4%
Sesotho	13,1%
English	12,5%
Population:	11 191 700 (<i>Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2010</i>)
% share of the total population:	22,4%
Area (km ²):	17 010
% of total area:	1,4%

Source: Statistics South Africa



Pocket Guide to South Africa 2010/11

PROVINCES

2010 FIFA World Cup™



Stadium: Soccer City (First National Bank) Stadium,
Soweto

Capacity: 94 700

Matches played: The stadium hosted the opening ceremony followed by the opening match between South Africa and Mexico, six other games, and the final as well as the closing ceremony.

11 June	South Africa – Mexico	Score: 1 – 1
14 June	Netherlands – Denmark	Score: 2 – 0
17 June	Argentina – Korea Republic	Score: 4 – 1
20 June	Brazil – Côte d'Ivoire	Score: 3 – 1
23 June	Ghana – Germany	Score: 0 – 1
27 June	Argentina – Mexico	Score: 3 – 1
2 July	Uruguay - Ghana	Score: 1 – 1
		(4 – 2 on penalties)
11 July	Netherlands – Spain	Score: 0 – 1



Some 50 km north of Johannesburg lies Pretoria, the administrative capital of South Africa and home to the Union Buildings.

From June 2011, the Gautrain will carry at least 40 000 passengers hourly between Johannesburg and Pretoria — stress-free and in less than 40 minutes.

Gauteng offers high bird diversity, as it straddles the transition between several different biomes. About 350 species are regularly present, and many more have been recorded. Gauteng offers the visitor 60 endemic species or near endemics to the southern African region.

2010 FIFA World Cup™



Stadium: Loftus Versfeld, Pretoria

Capacity: 50 000

Matches played:

13 June	Serbia – Ghana	Score: 0 – 1
16 June	South Africa – Uruguay	Score: 0 – 3
19 June	Cameroon – Denmark	Score: 1 – 2
23 June	USA – Algeria	Score: 1 – 0
25 June	Chile – Spain	Score: 1 – 2
29 June	Paraguay – Japan	Score: 0 – 0
		(5 – 3 on penalties)



Stadium: Ellis Park, Johannesburg

Capacity: 61 000

Matches played:

12 June	Argentina – Nigeria	Score: 1 – 0
15 June	Brazil – Korea DPR	Score: 2 – 1
18 June	Slovenia – USA	Score: 2 – 2
21 June	Spain – Honduras	Score: 2 – 0
24 June	Slovakia – Italy	Score: 3 – 2
28 June	Brazil – Chile	Score: 3 – 0
3 July	Paraguay – Spain	Score: 0 – 1



Pocket Guide to South Africa 2010/11

PROVINCES

KwaZulu-Natal



KwaZulu-Natal

Capital:	Pietermaritzburg
Principal languages:	
isiZulu	80,9%
English	13,6%
Afrikaans	1,5%
Population:	10 645 400 (<i>Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2010</i>)
% share of the total population:	21,3%
Area (km ²):	92 100
% of total area:	7,6%

Source: Statistics South Africa



2010 FIFA World Cup™



Stadium: Moses Mabhida Stadium, Durban

Capacity: 70 000

Matches played:

13 June	Germany – Australia	Score: 4 – 0
16 June	Spain – Switzerland	Score: 0 – 1
19 June	Netherlands – Japan	Score: 1 – 0
22 June	Nigeria – Korea Republic	Score: 2 – 2
25 June	Portugal – Brazil	Score: 0 – 0
28 June	Netherlands – Slovakia	Score: 2 – 1
7 July	Germany – Spain	Score: 0 – 1



KwaZulu-Natal is one of the country's most popular holiday destinations. This verdant region includes South Africa's lush subtropical east coast. Washed by the warm Indian Ocean, it stretches from Port Edward in the south, and northwards to the Mozambique boundary.

In addition to the magnificent coastline, the province also boasts sweeping savanna in the east, and the majestic Drakensberg mountain range in the west.

Visitors to KwaZulu-Natal can disembark at the King Shaka International Airport, which opened in April 2010. Alternatively, they can make use of the extensive national road network.

The forestry, wood and wood products sector enables KwaZulu-Natal to participate in various associated businesses such as furniture. This industry employs about 462 000 people and is worth R34,6 billion.

Limpopo



Limpopo

Capital:	Polokwane
Principal languages:	
Sesotho sa Leboa	52,1%
Xitsonga	22,4%
Tshivenda	15,9%
Population:	5 439 600 (<i>Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2010</i>)
% share of the total population:	10,9%
Area (km ²):	123 910
% of total area:	10,2%

Source: Statistics South Africa



Limpopo, South Africa's northernmost province, borders onto Mozambique, Zimbabwe and Botswana, making it the ideal entrance to Africa. Named after the Limpopo River that flows along its northern border, the province is rich in wildlife, spectacular scenery and a wealth of historical and cultural treasures.

This province is in the Savanna Biome, an area of mixed grassland and trees, which is generally known as bushveld. The province's natural resources include more than 50 provin-

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2010/11

PROVINCES

cial reserves, as well as several private game reserves. The largest section of the Kruger National Park is situated along the eastern boundary of Limpopo with Mozambique.

2010 FIFA World Cup™

Stadium: Peter Mokaba Stadium, Polokwane

Capacity: 46 000

Matches played:

13 June	Algeria – Slovenia	Score: 0 – 1
17 June	France – Mexico	Score: 0 – 2
22 June	Greece – Argentina	Score: 0 – 2
24 June	Paraguay – New Zealand	Score: 0 – 0



Lake Fundudzi in Limpopo is possibly the world's only freshwater lake formed by a landslide.

Mpumalanga

Mpumalanga means “Place where the Sun Rises” and people are drawn to the province by the magnificent scenery, the fauna and flora and the saga of the 1870 gold-rush era.

The area has a network of excellent roads and railway connections, making it highly accessible.

Because of its popularity as a tourist destination, Mpumalanga is also served by a number of small airports, such as the Kruger Mpumalanga International Airport.

Nelspruit is the capital of the province and the administrative and business centre of the Lowveld. Other important towns are Witbank, Standerton, Piet Retief, Malelane, Ermelo, Barberton and Sabie.

Mpumalanga falls mainly within the Grassland Biome. The escarpment and the Lowveld form a transitional zone between this grassland area and the Savanna Biome.



Mpumalanga

Capital:	Nelspruit
Principal languages:	
siSwati	30,8%
isiZulu	26,4%
isiNdebele	12,1%
Population:	3 617 600 (<i>Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2010</i>)
% share of the total population:	7,2%
Area (km ²):	79 490
% of total area:	6,5%

Source: Statistics South Africa



2010 FIFA World Cup™

Stadium: Mbombela Stadium, Nelspruit

Capacity: 46 000

Matches played:

16 June	Honduras – Chile	Score: 0 – 1
20 June	Italy – New Zealand	Score: 1 – 1
23 June	Australia – Serbia	Score: 2 – 1
25 June	Korea DPR – Côte d'Ivoire	Score: 0 – 3



Pocket Guide to South Africa 2010/11

PROVINCES

The rocks around Barberton in Mpumalanga are some of the most ancient in the world – over three billion years old.



Northern Cape

The Northern Cape is noted for its San rock art, diamond diggings, 4X4 safaris and the Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park. It is a vast stretch of semi-desert land. The distance from the capital, Kimberley, on the eastern border to Springbok in the west, is more than 900 km. It is a large, dry region of fluctuating temperatures and varying topographies.

The Northern Cape lies to the south of the Orange River, which provides the basis for a healthy agricultural industry. Away from the Orange, the landscape is characterised by vast arid plains with outcroppings of rock piles.

The province is renowned for its spectacular display of spring flowers, which, for a short period every year, attracts thousands of tourists.

Agriculture is one of the mainstay sectors of the Northern Cape's economy and is therefore critical in the economic planning.

In April 2009, the Northern Cape Provincial House of Traditional Leaders was inaugurated, with eight of its members representing the Khoisan communities. This province was the first to include these communities into the provincial structure



Northern Cape

Capital:	Kimberley
Principal languages:	
Afrikaans	68%
Setswana	20,8%
isiXhosa	2,5%
Population:	1 103 900 (<i>Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2010</i>)
% share of the total population:	2,2%
Area (km ²):	361 830
% of total area:	29,7%

Source: Statistics South Africa



although the legislation regarding indigenous communities had not yet been finalised.

North West



North West

Capital:	Mafikeng
Principal languages:	
Setswana	65,4%
Afrikaans	7,5%
isiXhosa	5,8%
Population:	3 200 900 (<i>Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2010</i>)
% share of the total population:	6,4%
Area (km ²):	116 320
% of total area:	9,5%

Source: Statistics South Africa



North West boasts a year-round sunny climate, exciting wildlife destinations like the Pilanesberg National Park and Madikwe Game Reserve, various cultural and historical attractions as well as popular tourist destinations, such as Sun City.

Also known as the “Platinum Province”, North West is centrally located on the subcontinent with direct road and rail links to all southern African countries, and with its own airport near the capital city, Mafikeng.

Most economic activity is concentrated in the Southern Region (between Potchefstroom and Klerksdorp), Rustenburg, and the Eastern Region, where more than 83,3% of GDP per region of the province is generated.

In March 2010, the North West Department of Human Settlements handed over 200 houses to deprived families in Mogwase in the Moses Kotane Municipality. The families who benefited had been living in uninhabitable areas next to the local railway line without basic services. The Mogwase Housing Project will benefit over 1 000 people.

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2010/11

PROVINCES

2010 FIFA World Cup™



Stadium: Royal Bafokeng, Rustenburg

Capacity: 42 000

Matches played:

12 June	England – USA	Score: 1 – 1
15 June	New Zealand – Slovakia	Score: 1 – 1
19 June	Ghana – Australia	Score: 1 – 1
22 June	Mexico – Uruguay	Score: 0 – 1
24 June	Denmark – Japan	Score: 1 – 3
26 June	USA – Ghana	Score: 1 – 2



Western Cape

The Western Cape's natural beauty, complemented by its hospitality, cultural diversity, excellent wine and colourful cuisine, make the province one of the world's greatest tourist attractions.

Cape Town, the legislative capital, is one of the world's most beautiful cities and is a must-see for tourists. Other important towns in the province include Worcester and Stellenbosch, known for their winelands; George, renowned for indigenous timber and vegetable produce and for its world-class golf courses; and Oudtshoorn, known for its ostrich products and the celebrated Cango caves.

The Cape Town Film Studio, Africa's first modern high-technology film complex, opened in 2010. It was built at a cost of R400 million and covers 200 hectares.





Western Cape

Capital:	Cape Town
Principal languages:	
Afrikaans	55,3%
isiXhosa	23,7%
English	19,3%
Population:	5 223 900 (<i>Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2010</i>)
% share of the total population:	10,4%
Area (km ²):	129 370
% of total area:	10,6%

Source: Statistics South Africa



2010 FIFA World Cup™

Stadium: Green Point Stadium, Cape Town

Capacity: 70 000

Matches played:

11 June	Uruguay – France	Score: 0 – 0
14 June	Italy – Paraguay	Score: 1 – 1
18 June	England – Algeria	Score: 0 – 0
21 June	Portugal – Korea DPR	Score: 7 – 0
24 June	Cameroon – Netherlands	Score: 1 – 2
29 June	Spain – Portugal	Score: 1 – 0
3 July	Argentina – Germany	Score: 0 – 4
6 July	Uruguay – Netherlands	Score: 2 – 3







ECONOMY

Hosting the 2010 FIFA World Cup™ acted as a catalyst for expanding the country's infrastructure base, skills development, employment creation and economic growth. The tournament boosted the country's standing internationally, showcasing its capabilities in delivering world-class infrastructure on time and without imposing a financial burden on the national fiscus.

The South African Government injected some R33 billion into preparations for the World Cup, which was an investment that formed part of a long-term development plan for the country.

Some R846 billion has been committed over the next three years to a public-sector infrastructure programme. More than 45% of these funds have been committed to South Africa's electricity, freight rail and ports sectors.

Leadership Group of the Framework Response to the Economic Crisis

In December 2008, the social partners that comprise the Presidential Economic Joint Working Group met to consider how South Africans should respond collectively to the difficult economic conditions largely as a result of the international economic crisis.

The Framework for South Africa's Response to the International Economic Crisis was tabled and endorsed at a special Presidential Economic Joint Working Group meeting.

The leadership group, which consists of representatives from labour, business, government and the community constituency who are responsible for guiding the implementation of the framework, responded with a range of separate and joint measures to deal with the impact of the recession. These include:

- In line with the framework agreement, government has maintained a strong countercyclical fiscal and monetary policy

The Industrial Development Corporation (IDC) approved R1,4 billion in loans to distressed companies during 2009's recession. Total loan approvals for the financial year, which ended in March 2010, decreased to R9,4 billion compared to R10,8 billion the previous year. The IDC intensified its lending activities and continued its focus on economic expansion with 65% of approved funding allocated to start-up companies or expansionary activities. The IDC's lending activities created or saved 25 000 jobs.

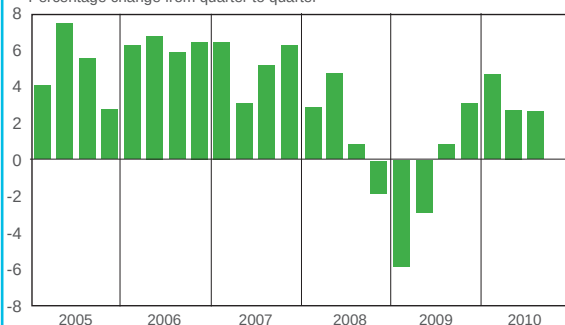


stance. Government spending levels have been maintained in spite of a sharp drop in tax revenues.

- While monetary policy has been the subject of robust debate, interest rates had been reduced by mid-2010 on four occasions by a total of 350 basis points.
- R11 billion has been set aside for activities designed to address the impact of the recession.
- South Africa introduced its first-ever training lay-off scheme, making R2,9 billion available for its implementation. The scheme is aimed at providing companies with an alternative to retrenching workers during a period of industrial slack caused by recession, thereby enabling employees to have continued income, employment security and skills acquisition.
- By mid-2010, the Retrenchment Action Plan, launched by the Manufacturing, Engineering and Related Services Sector Education and Training Authority, had about 7 000 workers in a programme based on the training lay-off model.
- Other initiatives include the R6,1 billion set aside by the Industrial Development Corporation (IDC) as special loans for firms in distress, and R2 billion allocated by the Unemployment Insurance Fund to the IDC to be loaned to firms in distress.
- Commercial banks and the development finance institutions have been developing an agreement that would allow

Gross domestic product

Percentage change from quarter to quarter



Source: Quarterly Bulletin, December 2010

them to help firms in distress by sharing relevant information and sharing risks.

Domestic output

According to the South African Reserve Bank's *Quarterly Bulletin*, released in September 2010, economic growth in the South African economy moderated in the second quarter of 2010. Real gross domestic production (GDP) increased at an annualised rate of 3,2% in the second quarter of 2010, following an increase of 4,6% in the first quarter.

Domestic expenditure

Growth in aggregate real gross domestic expenditure slowed from an annualised rate of 12,1% in the first quarter of 2010, to 2,3% in the second quarter. The slowdown in real gross domestic expenditure resulted primarily from slower growth in real final consumption expenditure by households. Growth in final consumption expenditure by households slowed to an annualised rate of 4,8% in the second quarter of 2010, compared to an increase of 5,7% in the preceding quarter.

Price inflation

While producer price inflation picked up significantly from negative 12-month rates in most of 2009 to positive rates by mid-2010, consumer price inflation has trended lower since August 2008 and remained within the target range in the six months to July 2010, falling below 4% in September.

A combination of economic factors influenced price developments in the domestic economy, with producer prices strongly influenced by a resurgence in international commodity prices since the beginning of 2009 and high electricity price increases, only partly countered by an appreciation in the external value of the Rand.

Consumer prices responded favourably to the counter-inflationary forces emanating from low inflation in trading-partner countries, the appreciation in the exchange rate of the Rand, substantial surplus capacity in the economy and the resulting intensified competition for business. Deflation in the producer prices of domestic output reverted to inflation in December 2009, accelerating in the following months to July 2010. These price changes were largely due to base effects, higher commodity prices as well as the ongoing elevated electricity price increases announced by Eskom.

The 11th Fortune/TIME/CNN Global Forum was hosted by Time Warner Inc and the Department of Trade and Industry in Cape Town in June 2010. The event provided an opportunity for South African, regional and international organisations to forge relationships and form business linkages with key players and decision-makers in the various sectors globally. A diverse group of leaders who went beyond government and business and included science and technology, entertainment and culture, sports, and non-governmental organisations, attended.



Exchange rates

The nominal effective exchange rate of the Rand decreased marginally by 0,8% from the end of March 2010 to the end of June, following an increase of 3,9% during the first quarter. The decline in the exchange rate of the Rand during the second quarter of 2010 may partly be attributed to international economic developments, especially the sovereign debt crisis in Europe. The exchange rate of the Rand performed admirably against the Euro during the second quarter of 2010 while it depreciated considerably against the Japanese Yen.

The weighted average exchange rate of the Rand increased by 1,2% from the end of June 2010 to the end of August partly as a result of United States dollar weakness, an unchanged monetary policy stance as announced by the Reserve Bank in July 2010 and a further decline in the domestic inflation rate.

The nominal effective exchange rate of the Rand showed much less volatility during the first half of 2010 compared to the second half of 2009. During the months of January, February, April, June and August 2010 the trade-weighted exchange rate of the Rand did not deviate by more than 2% from the mean, while a deviation of more than 2% was observed in all the months during the second half of 2009. The real effective exchange rate of the Rand increased by 11% during the 12 months up to June 2010. While the increase in the real effective exchange rate of the Rand resulted in a deterioration in the competitiveness of South African exporters, the decline in the volatility of the Rand exchange rate provided some stability to business operations and outcomes.

Foreign trade and payments

Following an increase in the first quarter of 2010, gross dividend payments contracted in the second quarter of 2010. Net

interest payments to foreign creditors and investors increased marginally during the second quarter. The improvement in the deficit on the overall account was further supplemented by a contraction in net current transfer payments to members of the Southern African Customs Union, consistent with the decline in trade volumes.

South Africa's terms of trade improved further in the second quarter of 2010 as the Rand price of exported goods and services increased further while that of imported goods and services declined marginally. The relatively higher Rand price of merchandise exports further supported the improvement in the current-account balance during the second quarter.

Department of Economic Development

The Department of Economic Development, which was established in 2009, assumed responsibility for coordinating government's work on the Framework for South Africa's response to the International Economic Crisis. The department is also responsible for developing economic policy with broad, cross-cutting focus so that macro- and micro-economic policy reinforce each other and are both aligned to the electoral mandate. The department is responsible for economic development planning and works with other departments to ensure coordination around a programme that places decent work at the centre of government's economic policies to secure better employment outcomes.

Policy development

The department has identified a number of areas with the potential for new jobs. These are:

- infrastructure development
- the green economy
- the manufacturing sector
- knowledge-economy activities
- the rural, agriculture and agroprocessing sector
- tourism and business process services
- the social economy, which includes cooperatives
- public-sector growth
- the continental and regional economy.

An important policy focus for the department will be the creation of sustainable livelihoods and addressing the challenges of enterprises in the Second Economy.



The department will establish the Ministerial Advisory Panel, which will serve as an ideas forum.

Trade relations

Internationally, open economies with an export base perform much better in terms of economic growth than do closed economies. Increasingly, production is becoming globally integrated, and South Africa forms a vital part of international supply chains.

Therefore, dismantling barriers to trade, especially those faced by South African exporters, is a critical component of any economic strategy that promotes sustainable growth.

Africa

Driven by regional economic development and integration imperatives, the South African Government continues to display its commitment to its neighbours and other members of the Southern African Development Community and regional blocs such as the Common Market for Eastern and Southern Africa through the Spatial Development Initiative (SDI) Programme.

The SDI Programme aims to promote trade and investment-led economic growth and development. The programme methodology allows for the creation of a critical mass of integrated private-sector and infrastructure development necessary to kick-start a sustainable economic development process. It is focused on unlocking inherent economic potential in specific southern African locations, often along existing transport or development corridors. The SDI methodology emphasises the enhancement of the attractiveness of an area for investment by simultaneously advocating the removal of bureaucratic, administrative and institutional impediments to trade and investment.

South Africa continues to be an important source of investments in Africa.

The following areas have been prioritised:

- infrastructure and logistics
- energy and information and communications technology
- water and waste management
- transport
- construction
- oil and gas infrastructure
- agribusiness

- mining
- human-resource development.

Relations with the North

South Africa continues to consolidate its economic and trade relations with the major economies in the north as they remain important markets for goods, services, investment and technology. Trade relations with Europe, particularly with the European Union (EU), are pivotal to South Africa's economic development. The Trade, Development and Cooperation Agreement with the EU forms a substantial element of South Africa's reconstruction and development.

The United Kingdom (UK), Germany, the Netherlands and Switzerland are among South Africa's top-10 export destinations. Germany, the UK and France are among the top-10 countries from which South Africa's imports originate.

Since 2001, Germany has been South Africa's largest source of imports, showing annual growth of 18,5% between 2007 and 2008. In 2009, Germany was overtaken by China, which became the largest source of imports.

South-South trade

In pursuing relations with the South, it will be necessary to ensure an approach to trade that will strengthen South Africa's and Africa's efforts to develop an industrial base rather than the continuation of the current pattern of trade where exports of raw material are exchanged for manufactured goods.

Bilateral engagements

The Department of Trade and Industry has learned important lessons that will inform future bilateral engagements. Firstly, as compared to free trade areas, more focused preferential trade agreements allow for a more strategic integration process among developing countries. Secondly, it is increasingly apparent that tariffs are not always the most important barrier faced in foreign markets and hence negotiating outcomes must deal more effectively with non-tariff barriers. Thirdly, the department will need to give attention to forging sectoral cooperation agreements to support South Africa's industrial development objectives.

Multilateral engagements

South Africa is a strong proponent of multilateralism. The country has seen multilateralism as the necessary intergovernmental response to the challenges of globalisation and deepening interdependence among economies and societies around the world. Established as an outcome of the Uruguay Round of multilateral trade negotiations in 1994, the World Trade Organisation (WTO), having established extensive multilateral rules over global trade, has moved to the centre of an evolving system of multilateral institutions charged with global economic governance.

While multilateral disciplines in the WTO reduce the scope for unilateral action by powerful nations, existing rules exhibit imbalances and inequities that prejudice the trade and development interests of developing countries.

South Africa's support for the launch of the Doha Round was premised on an assessment that negotiations opened up a possibility to rebalance the global trading system more in favour of developing countries. South Africa's negotiating objectives aim to:

- enhance market access for products of export interests to developing countries
- eliminate industrial country subsidies and support to inefficient producers, particularly in agriculture
- renegotiate rules that perpetuate imbalances in international trade
- ensure policy space for developing countries to pursue developmental objectives through meaningful implementation of the principle of special and differential treatment.

Over the course of the Doha Round negotiations, the country has witnessed an erosion of the developmental mandate. This has manifested in the gradual lowering of the ambition of developed countries to substantially reform agriculture trade, alongside growing pressure on emerging developing countries to open their markets for industrial products and services.

Economic transformation

The sum total of the estimated 2,8 million small, medium and micro-enterprises (SMMEs) contribute between 52% and 57% to the GDP. It is also estimated that SMMEs contribute nearly 61% of employment.

Government aims to boost small enterprises, equalise income and wealth and create long-term jobs. Fostering entrepreneurship among women is a particular focus.

Developing SMMEs has attracted increasing attention in South Africa in recent years, as an engine for general economic growth, and for employment creation and equity acceleration.

The Small Enterprise Development Agency (Seda), which provides non-financial support to small and medium enterprises (SMEs), was formed by merging the Ntsika Enterprise Promotion Agency and the National Manufacturing Advisory Centre. It aims to:

- improve geographic outreach
 - achieve the desired impact on small enterprises
 - provide a single access point for small enterprises
 - be inclusive of all relevant stakeholders
 - leverage resources in service delivery
 - optimise resource usage
 - align government's service-delivery strategy coherently.
- The Department of Trade and Industry established the necessary institutional framework for the promotion of a more inclusive economy, in the form of the Integrated Small Business Strategy and the agencies designed to deliver support and services to SMMEs, namely:

- Khula Enterprise Finance Limited (Ltd) to provide financial support to the underserved market of between R10 000 and R250 000
- the Seda for non-financial support
- the South African Micro-Finance Apex Fund for micro-finance of R10 000
- the National Empowerment Fund for financing Broad-Based Black Economic Empoerment transactions.

In 2009/10, highlights in this sector included:

- The Technology and Human Resources for Industry Programme leveraged R227 million from the private sector for new technology development and supported 298 enterprises (64% of which are SMMEs), 2 187 students and 685 researchers.
- The Support Programme for Industrial Innovation recorded sales of R283 million, of which R191 million were export sales for new products and processes in 2009/10, created 176 shop-floor jobs and 59 new projects were supported against a target of 80 projects.

- The *National SMME Directory* was finalised incorporating SMME support programmes from the public, private sector and donor-funded programmes.
- The Cooperative Strategy aimed at developing cooperatives through the provision and upscaling of the relevant support programmes was finalised and approved by the National Economic Development and Labour Council (Nedlac), including the Nedlac report in this regard.
- The targeted procurement for small enterprises, through the 10 Product Procurement Policy Framework aimed at increasing access to markets for SMMEs through government procurement was finalised and the SMME payment hotline was successfully launched in September 2009. The Department of Trade and Industry payment hotline received about 20 000 calls in the last financial year, and the value of payments facilitated was R210 million.

State-owned enterprises (SOEs)

As the shareholder representative for government, the Department of Public Enterprises is responsible for overseeing nine SOEs, namely Alexkor, Broadband Infraco, Denel, Eskom, the Pebble-Bed Modular Reactor, South African Airways, South African Express Airways, South African Forestry Company and Transnet. The role of the department is to ensure that SOEs provide economic growth and give South Africa a cutting edge in the development of key infrastructure and manufacturing capacity.

It monitors performance with regard to:

- infrastructure investment and delivery
- operational and industry efficiency
- financial and commercial viability
- governance and regulatory compliance.

Optimal excellence and quality service delivery demand that public entities share the same vision of the department, and are responsive to the developmental agenda.

The Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF) for 2009/14 states the need to review the SOEs as part of the economic transformation agenda.

The MTSF also states the need for government to integrate SOEs into the planning processes and improve the monitoring and evaluation of their performance.

In 2010, President Jacob Zuma appointed the Presidential Review Committee to conduct a review of SOEs and, among other things, to determine how government can strengthen alignment between its development objectives and the strategic role to be played by SOEs in the economy.

Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP)

The EPWP is a government-wide intervention to create both short and ongoing work opportunities.

The EPWP continues to be a strategic intervention to alleviate poverty and unemployment through the creation of labour-intensive work opportunities.

The EPWP is characterised by, among other things, caring for the elderly and sick, educating pre-school children, rehabilitating and cleaning up the environment, as well as upgrading and maintaining crucial infrastructure such as roads, bridges, water and sanitation.

The Leadership Group of the Framework Response to the Economic Crisis accelerated the development of regulatory measures to provide guidance on improved terms and conditions of employment for EPWP employees, thereby furthering the objectives of decent work.

The EPWP aims to create 4,5 million work opportunities, and more than a million opportunities have been created already since the beginning of Phase Two. Part of the programme focuses on repairing the country's roads networks.

The Training of the Unemployed Project was launched in March 2010. The project seeks to train and re-skill South African workers who were retrenched as a result of the global economic recession. The project trains electricians, boiler-makers, welders and mechanics to be employable and to start their own businesses. By May 2010, more than 750 trainees had registered for the project. The aim is to train as many South Africans as possible.

The qualifications the trainees obtain at the end of their course meet qualification requirements of the Manufacturing, Engineering and Related Services Education and Training Authority. By May 2010, the Unemployment Insurance Fund and other government entities contributed almost R50 million to train the candidates. Participants in the project are paid a stipend of R2 100 a month. The project is due to be completed by the end of July 2011.





FINANCE

After contracting by 1,8% in 2009 in response to the global recession, South Africa's domestic economy was expected to grow by 2,3% in 2010, rising to 3,6% by 2012.

The recession had a far-reaching impact on South Africa with almost a million jobs lost between the fourth quarter of 2008 and the first quarter of 2010.

Economic activity has started to revive and a gradual improvement in household consumption, employment and private investment is expected.

The improved outlook is supported by expansionary fiscal and monetary policies, public-sector investment, lower inflation, higher commodity prices and the upturn in global demand.

National Treasury aims to promote economic development, good governance, social progress and rising living standards through the accountable, economic, efficient, equitable and sustainable management of South Africa's public finances.

National Treasury endeavours to advance economic growth, broad-based empowerment, progressive realisation of human rights and the elimination of poverty. It is responsible for preparing a sound and sustainable national budget and an equitable division of resources among the three spheres of government. It strives to raise fiscal resources equitably and efficiently and to manage government's financial assets and liabilities soundly, promoting transparency and effective financial management.

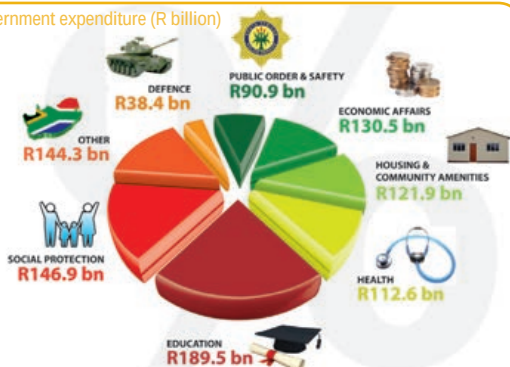
The Constitution stipulates a framework for the division of responsibilities between national, provincial and local government. It prescribes an equitable division of revenue between the spheres of government, taking into account their respective functions. It also creates an independent auditor-general (AG) and an independent central bank, and sets out the principles governing financial accountability to Parliament, as well as the annual budget process.

Fiscal policy framework

Government's fiscal policy seeks to support structural reforms of the South African economy consistent with long-run growth, employment creation and an equitable distribution of income.

The 2010 budget framework balanced the short-term need for economic stimulus with the long-term imperative of fiscal sustainability.

Government expenditure (R billion)



Source: National Treasury: *People's Guide to the Budget*, 2011

It aims to promote investment and export expansion while enabling government to finance public services, redistribution and development in an affordable and sustainable budget framework.

Fiscal policy seeks to:

- present a fuller picture of government finances and the effects of policy decisions
- ensure a sound and sustainable balance between government's spending, tax and borrowing requirements
- improve domestic savings to support a higher level of investment and reduce the need to borrow abroad
- keep government consumption spending at an affordable level
- contribute to lower inflation and a sustainable balance of payments
- support an export-friendly trade and industrial strategy to improve South Africa's competitiveness.

The economy and fiscal stance

The Minister of Finance, Mr Pravin Gordhan, presented the national Budget for 2011/12 in February 2011.

The 2011 Budget outlined several aspects of a new growth path for South Africa:

- R10 billion for job creation, small enterprise development and youth employment

- R9,5 billion to increase enrolment at Further Education and Training colleges and enhance skills development
- R8,2 billion to improve school facilities
- R7,9 billion to improve primary healthcare, revitalise hospitals and combat HIV and AIDS
- R10,4 billion for public transport, roads and rail infrastructure
- R7,2 billion to upgrade human settlements, municipal services and water infrastructure
- R2,8 billion for rural development and emerging farmer support
- R8,9 billion for social security benefits and social grants
- Old age and disability grants increase by R60 to R1 140 a month and the Child-Support Grant will increase to R260 in April and R270 in October
- R1,8 billion for municipalities and provinces to deal with immediate disaster needs.

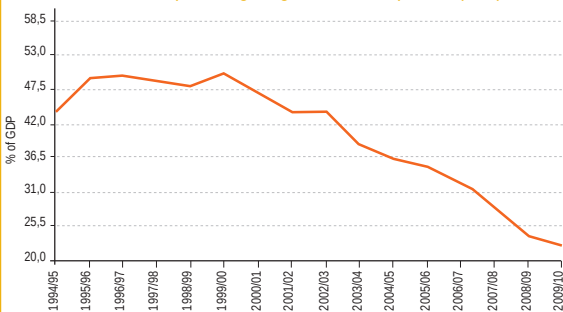
Debt management

The prudent management of government's financial assets and liabilities remains a priority.

Government's debt-management policies have evolved from concentrating exclusively on financing the borrowing requirement to broader support for government's macro-economic objectives.

Government continued to support state-owned enterprises during the economic downturn, through the issuing of guarantees on a case-by-case basis. Steps taken to strengthen

Government debt as percentage of gross domestic product (GDP)



Source: Development Indicators, 2010



the capital market enable the public sector to finance the growing borrowing requirement in the domestic market.

The cost of higher borrowing is, however, greater expenditure on interest. National government's net debt is expected to rise from 23% of gross domestic product (GDP) in 2008/09 to about 40% in 2013, and will only stabilise in 2015.

Debt levels remain sustainable, despite an expected increase in government debt from R627 billion in 2008/09 to R1 419 billion in 2012/13.

Debt-service cost as a percentage of GDP will average 3% over the medium term. Debt-service cost as a ratio of revenue will be maintained as maturing debt is refinanced in a lower interest rate environment.

Managing public finances

Transforming public-sector financial management is one of National Treasury's key objectives. To this end, National Treasury has been implementing the Public Finance Management Act (PFMA), 1999 since 1 April 2000.

Since the implementation of the PFMA, 1999, there have been measurable improvements in financial management in both the national and provincial spheres of government, which include, among other things:

- an improved linkage between planning and budgeting, whereby departments are now required to compile and table strategic plans that are consistent with their budget envelope
- strategic plans and budget documentation containing improved information on measurable objectives expressed in terms of quantity, quality and timeliness
- departments submitting monthly expenditure reports on actual expenditure incurred, and on projected expenditure for the remainder of the financial year
- risk-management processes, which are being implemented by institutions
- establishing internal-audit functions and audit committees in all departments
- setting accounting standards in accordance with best accounting practices, both locally and internationally
- finalising and submitting financial statements to the Auditor-General (AG) within two months of the end of the financial year
- tabling annual reports in the legislature within six months of the end of the financial year.

Auditor-General

The Constitution guarantees the independence of the AG. The office audits national, provincial and local government.

The AG has the power to audit the activities of public entities without the approval of the chief executive officer or directors.

Taxation

The South African Revenue Service collected R598,8 billion (unaudited) in revenue for 2009/10 – R8,4 billion more than its target. In line with the economic slowdown, the revenue target was adjusted downwards in October 2009 from R659,3 billion (the amount announced in the Budget of February 2009) to R589 billion with a slight upward revision in February 2010 to R590,4 billion.

The main contributors to total tax revenue, based on the 2009/10 revised estimate of R590,4 billion, were personal income tax (R205,2 billion), value-added tax (VAT) (R147,9 billion) and company income tax (R134,9 billion).

Sources of revenue

Income tax

Income tax is government's main source of income and is levied in terms of the Income Tax Act, 1962.

In South Africa, income tax is levied on South African residents' worldwide income, with appropriate relief to avoid double taxation. Non-residents are taxed on their income from a South African source. Tax is levied on taxable income, which, in essence, consists of gross income less allowable deductions as per the Act.

The income threshold below which no tax is payable by individuals under 65 years was raised to R57 000 for the tax year beginning March 2010, and for taxpayers 65 years and older to R88 528 a year.

The 2010 Budget proposed personal income tax relief to individual taxpayers amounting to R6,5 billion to compensate partially for inflation. Most of the relief was provided to taxpayers in lower-income brackets.

Value-added tax

VAT is levied on the supply of all goods and services rendered by registered vendors throughout the business cycle.

In November 2010, government introduced a new tax incentive programme, which seeks to improve the productivity of the country's manufacturing sector by supporting investments in assets as well as training for employees.



The incentive replaces the Strategic Industrial Projects (SIP), which was launched by government to attract private-sector investment. The SIP resulted in the creation of 6 600 jobs.

The incentive, which will run until 31 December 2015, offers R900 million for new industrial projects that use new and unused manufacturing assets (greenfield investments) as well as R550 million for brownfield projects which provide for expansion or upgrades of existing projects.

The decline of credit extension to support investment in manufacturing was another reason for the creation of the incentive.

The loss of the fiscus, as a result of the incentive, in terms of tax revenue foregone, will be R5,6 billion as was announced in the Budget in 2008.

Among some of the criteria to receive the tax relief include companies going green by saving energy and projects creating direct employment in the country.

Effectively, VAT is levied on the value added by an enterprise. Vendors levy and pay over the tax included in their prices, resulting in VAT being paid by the final consumer. VAT is also levied on the importation of goods and services into South Africa. It is levied at the standard rate of 14%, but certain supplies are zero-rated or are exempt from VAT.

South African Reserve Bank

The bank, which is independent, formulates and implements monetary policy and regulates the supply of money by influencing its cost.

An important responsibility of the bank is to ensure that the banking system as a whole is sound and meets the requirements of the community.

The bank acts as a banker to other banking institutions. It is also the custodian of the statutory cash reserves and provides facilities for the clearing and settlement of inter-bank obligations.

Monetary policy

Growth over 12 months in the broad money supply (M3) slowed significantly from a high of 13,9% in January 2009 to an all-time low of 0,1% in February 2010 and 1,5% in March. Growth over 12 months in banks' total loans and advances

similarly moderated from 11,4% in January 2009 to a negative growth rate of 0,3% in March 2010.

In the wake of the global financial crisis, many central banks loosened monetary policy significantly. Most of these adjustments occurred during late 2008 and the first half of 2009. South Africa generally followed this trend, and between December 2008 and August 2009, the repurchase rate was reduced by a total of 500 basis points.

The stance of monetary policy remained unchanged until March 2010. During this period, the Monetary Policy Committee (MPC) was of the view that the repurchase rate was consistent with the expected inflation trajectory and with the projected recovery in the domestic economy.

At the March meeting, the repurchase rate was reduced by a further 50 basis points to a level of 6,5% per year. This further reduction in the rate was implemented against the backdrop of a more favourable inflation outlook and continued weakness in domestic household consumption expenditure in particular.

The repo rate was lowered to 6% in September 2010 and to 5,5% in November 2010.

The banking industry

As at the end of December 2009, there were 31 banking institutions reporting data to the Bank Supervision Department

Dates of change in the repurchase rate

Date	%
2008-04-11	11,5
2008-06-12	12
2008-12-12	11,5
2009-02-06	10,5
2009-03-25	9,5
2009-05-04	8,5
2009-05-29	7,5
2009-08-14	7
2010-03-26	6,5
2010-09-10	6
2010-11-19	5,5

Source: South African Reserve Bank

In August 2010, online gambling was banned in South Africa following the Gauteng Gambling Board's long-running battle with online casinos. This decision means that Internet operators who offer online gambling to South African residents for gain, and a player or punter who takes part in online betting, are guilty of breaking the law.

Furthermore, the ruling also makes Internet service-providers accountable for the services and targets banks and financial institutions that process the winners' payments and betting transactions.

People who are prosecuted and found guilty of breach or contravention of the gambling legislation could receive a fine of R10 million or 10 years in jail or both.

of the South African Reserve Bank (excluding two mutual banks, but including one institution conducting banking business in terms of an exemption from the provisions of the Banks Act, 1990, namely Ithala Limited, and 42 international banks with authorised representative offices in South Africa).

Of the nominal value of the total South African banking sector's shares in issue at the end of December 2009, foreign shareholders held 47,5%; domestic shareholders held 30,4%; and minority shareholders held 22,1%.

Total banking-sector assets amounted to R2 967 billion at the end of December 2009, compared with R3 177 billion at the end of December 2008, representing negative year-on-year growth of 6,6%. Total assets of the four largest banks accounted for 84,6% of total banking-sector assets (December 2008: 84,4%).

Gross loans and advances declined by 2,6% from R2 316 billion at the end of December 2008 to R2 257 billion at the end of December 2009 (December 2008: 9% increase).

Home loans and term loans remained the largest component of gross loans and advances, representing about 50% thereof, followed by lease and instalment debtors at 10,5% and commercial mortgages at 9,7%.

Insurance companies

The aim of short-term insurance is to put the insured in the same position they occupied immediately before the loss, depending on the terms and conditions of the policy contract. Examples of short-term insurance include motor-vehicle, household, theft and fire insurance.

By 31 March 2010, there were 110 short-term insurers.

Long-term insurance includes life and assistance policies that pay a benefit to dependants on the death of the insured person/s, endowment (savings) policies payable at a predetermined date, disability policies, pensions and retirement policies, or even a combination of these policies.

By 31 March 2010, there were 88 long-term insurers.

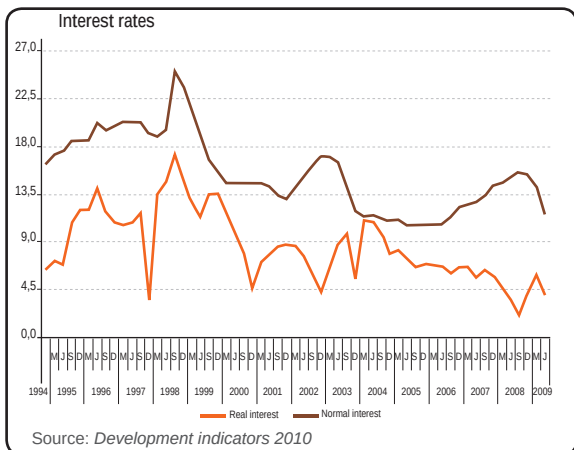
Development Bank of Southern Africa

The primary purpose of the bank is to promote economic development and growth, human-resource development and institutional capacity-building. The bank's mandate is focused on infrastructure.

Financial Services Board (FSB)

The FSB is an independent statutory body financed by levies imposed on regulated institutions and persons.

The FSB supervises institutions and services, in terms of several parliamentary Acts that entrust regulatory functions to the registrars of long-term insurance, short-term insurance, friendly societies, pension funds, collective investment schemes, financial services providers, exchanges and financial markets.





**DOING BUSINESS IN
SOUTH AFRICA**



DOING BUSINESS IN SOUTH AFRICA

The Department of Economic Development is responsible to develop economic policy with broad, cross-cutting focus so that macro and micro-economic policy reinforce each other and are both aligned to the electoral mandate.

The department is responsible for economic development planning and works collegially with other departments to ensure coordination around a programme that places decent work at the centre of government's economic policies to secure better employment outcomes. The department's budget of R418 million for 2010/11 is allocated as follows:

- R18,2 million for policy development work
- R25,8 million for economic planning and coordination
- R11,2 million for economic development and dialogue
- R44,8 million for administration, the ministry and capital expenditure
- R152 million for small business funding, through transfers to Khula and the South African Micro-Finance Apex Fund (Samaf)
- R102 million for the competition authorities to strengthen their work
- R64 million for trade administration, and to the International Trade Administration Commission of South Africa.

Broadening economic participation

Addressing the challenges faced by black- and women entrepreneurs, is a key area of focus for the Department of Trade and Industry in broadening economic inclusion and promoting transformation in the economy. The department aims to ensure the integration and alignment of the Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment (BBBEE) Policy with the industrial policy framework.

The Public Sector Small, Medium and Micro-Enterprise (SMME) Payment Assistance Hotline provides a single point of contact between SMMEs and government. This is to facilitate the payment of services rendered by SMMEs, within 30 days of delivery, to public-sector institutions.



The Public Sector SMME Payment Assistance Hotline can be reached via a dedicated share call number 0860 766 3729 (0860 SMME PAY). It operates from 06:00 to 18:00 on weekdays. After-hour enquiries may be submitted via e-mail or fax. The e-mail and fax templates can be downloaded via the Small Enterprise Development Agency website (www.seda.org.za).

The launch of the BBBEE Advisory Council in December 2009 signified an important milestone in fulfilling the transformation agenda.

One of the key functions of the council is to monitor the implementation of BBBEE by all organs of state, public entities, government departments, sector charter councils, and the general public at large. Other tasks of the advisory council include:

- policy refinement and amending legislation to address identified gaps
- finalising the alignment of the Preferential Procurement Policy Framework Act, 2000 to BBBEE codes of good practice
- increasing BEE verification capacity and refinement of the accreditation process.

The Department of Trade and Industry aims to increasingly integrate gender-equity measures into its programmes.

A strategy on gender and women economic empowerment was expected to be finalised in 2010, focusing on integrated solutions for women in various areas, including directly tackling the barriers hindering their participation in the economy.

In February 2010, Deputy President Kgalema Motlanthe addressed the inaugural meeting of the BBBEE Council in Pretoria.

The Codes of Good Practice for BBBEE assist and advise both the public and private sectors on their implementation of the objectives of the BBBEE Act, 2003. The codes provide definitions, interpretation and principles of BBBEE; different categories of BEE entities; and qualification criteria for preferential procurement purposes and other economic activities.

The Codes of Good Practice also provide the weightings, indicators, targets and guidelines for stakeholders in the relevant sectors of the economy to draw up transformation charters for their sectors.

The department established the necessary institutional framework for the promotion of a more inclusive economy, in the form of the Integrated Small Business Strategy and the agencies designed to deliver support and services to small, medium and micro-enterprises, namely:

- Khula Enterprise Finance Limited (Ltd) to provide financial support to the underserved market of between R10 000 and R250 000

DOING BUSINESS IN SOUTH AFRICA

- the Small Enterprise Development Agency (Seda) for non-financial support
- Samaf for micro-finance of R10 000
- the National Empowerment Fund for financing BBBEE transactions.

The National Small Business Advisory Council advises on issues affecting owner-managed businesses. The 15-member council comprises business owners, academics and international entrepreneurial experts.

The mandate of Seda is to design and implement a standard national delivery network that must uniformly apply throughout the country.

Its role includes the support and promotion of cooperative enterprises, particularly those located in rural areas.

Business Partners Ltd is a specialised risk financier that provides customised and integrated investment, technical assistance, mentorship and property services to small and medium enterprises in South Africa, Kenya and Madagascar.

Department of Trade and Industry

The Department of Trade and Industry aims to lead and facilitate access to sustainable economic activity and employment for all South Africans. South Africa has trading relationships with over 200 countries and territories.

The department also aims to catalyse economic transformation and development, and to provide a predictable,



Proudly South African is a Buy Local Campaign launched by government, organised business, organised labour and community organisations (represented in the National Economic Development and Labour Council) to boost job creation by promoting South African companies and locally made products.

By buying Proudly South African, consumers/businesses are making a personal contribution to nation-building. Buy Local helps to fight unemployment and in the process also serves to alleviate poverty, crime and disease. In addition, consumers get an assurance of quality because only quality products carry the logo (mark of quality). The Proudly South African logo identifies companies/organisations that are members of the campaign or have been accredited by the campaign. Active members may only use the Proudly South African mark of quality to ensure that it maintains its integrity.



The Industrial Development Corporation (IDC) approved R1,4 billion in loans to distressed companies during 2009's recession. Total loan approvals for the financial year ended March 2010 decreased to R9,4 billion compared with R10,8 billion the previous year. The IDC intensified its lending activities and continued its focus on economic expansion with 65% of new funding approved allocated to start-up companies or expansionary activities. The IDC's lending activities created or saved 25 000 jobs.



competitive, equitable and socially responsible environment for investment, enterprise and trade for economic citizens.

In this way, the department contributes to achieving government's vision of an adaptive and restructured economy, characterised by accelerated economic growth, employment creation and greater equity by 2014.

To contribute to greater shared growth in the country, the department is pursuing the goals of:

- significantly progressing BBBEE
- increasing the contribution of small enterprises to the economy
- contributing towards providing accessible, transparent and efficient access to redress
- contributing towards building skills, technology and infrastructure platforms from which enterprises can benefit
- increasing market-access opportunities for, and export of, South African goods and services
- increasing the overall level of direct investment, as well as investment in priority sectors
- repositioning the economy in higher value-added segments of value matrices in knowledge-driven manufacturing and services
- contributing towards the economic growth and development of the African continent within the New Partnership for Africa's Development framework
- building an efficient, effective and accessible organisation to achieve these outcomes.

In 2009/10, the Department of Trade and Industry:

- gave access to 32 companies in the clothing and textile sector to a R434-million facility for two programmes to the value of R29 million
- issued rebate certificates in 2009 in the automotives sector with a deemed value of just over R5 billion for qualifying products

DOING BUSINESS IN SOUTH AFRICA

- allocated funds for the film, tourism and business processing outsourcing (BPO) subsectors, ensuring that 5 693 jobs were created in the BPO subsector between April and September 2009
- completed and issued amended guidelines for the Enterprise Investment Programme (EIP), simplifying rules and setting realistic requirements in line with commercial realities
- developed the Automotive Investment Scheme guidelines to support the motor industry for a budget of R2,7 billion over the next three years by extending the programme to include investment in the component sector
- developed tax incentive regulations and appointed an adjudication committee
- supported private-sector investment in targeted sectors through the funding of 871 enterprises in the manufacturing, tourism, film, television, BPO and off-shoring (BPO&O) sectors
- supported 795 projects, which will create 16 760 jobs, leveraging an R8,4 billion investment under the EIP scheme
- paid 3 811 Small Medium Enterprise Development Programme claims worth R1,35 billion
- approved 11 BPO&O projects worth R620 million and creating 11 852 jobs
- improved the competitiveness of small, black owned enterprises by supporting 4 008 enterprises to acquire business development services
- revised the Black Business Supplier Development Programme guidelines
- improved the viability and competitiveness of 246 emerging cooperatives through funding of R34,5 million
- completed the consultation process on modernising South Africa's Technical Infrastructure Strategy.

Industrial Policy Action Plan (IPAP)

In February 2010, Cabinet approved the implementation of the second 2010/11 – 2012/13 IPAP, which will help alter the structure of the economy to support decent work and sustainable livelihoods.

The IPAP II expands the first plan with more focus on scaling up the industrial policy interventions to alter the structure of the economy that supports decent work and sustainable livelihood.

The plan will be reviewed annually to ensure that its objectives are met. Progress reports on the implementation of IPAP II will be submitted to Cabinet every six months.

The plan will focus on unlocking South Africa's industrial development in a sustainable manner by identifying strategic industrial interventions.

It fast-tracks development in the four lead sectors of the South African economy, namely capital/transport equipment and metals; automotives and components; chemicals, plastic fabrication and pharmaceuticals; and forestry, pulp and paper, and furniture.

Government aims to create about 2,5 million jobs by 2020 with the launch of the IPAP II, which came into effect in April 2010, and will focus on four key areas to boost industrial capacity.

The areas include looking at ways of strengthening the Industrial Development Corporation, revising procurement legislation, deploying trade policies more strategically and targeting anti-competitive practices.

Taxation

International tax agreements are important for encouraging investment and trade flows between nations, by providing certainty about the tax framework. By reaching agreement on the allocation of taxing rights between residence and source countries of international investors, double taxation agreements provide a solid platform for growth in international trade and investment. South Africa has tax agreements with many countries.

Exchange control

Exchange control is administered by the South African Reserve Bank (SARB) on behalf of the Minister of Finance.

The Minister of Finance has also appointed certain banks to act as authorised dealers in foreign exchange as well as authorised dealers with limited authority, which gives them the right to buy and sell foreign exchange, subject to conditions and within limits prescribed by the Exchange Control Department (Excon) of the SARB. Authorised dealers are not agents of Excon, but act on behalf of their customers.

The Government is committed to an open capital market and the gradual relaxation of exchange controls.

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2010/11

DOING BUSINESS IN SOUTH AFRICA

Institutional investors

Exchange-control limits on foreign investment by institutional investors – insurers, pension funds, collective investment schemes (CIS) and investment managers – have been gradually liberalised since 1996.

Foreign diversification of investment portfolios, consistent with prudential limits, has largely been achieved. This allowed the authorities to replace exchange controls on institutional investors with a system of prudential regulation.

This shift entails the removal of the pre-application process for foreign investment and its replacement with a system of quarterly reporting on and monitoring of foreign exposures.

Retirement funds, long-term insurers, CIS management companies and investment managers are allowed to transfer funds from South Africa for investment abroad:

- Retirement funds and the underwritten policy business of long-term insurers may invest up to 20% of total retail assets. Investment managers registered as institutional investors for exchange-control purposes, CIS management companies and investment-linked businesses of long-term insurers are restricted to 30% of total retail assets under management.
- Institutional investors will be allowed to invest an additional 5% of their total retail assets by acquiring foreign-currency denominated portfolio assets in Africa through foreign-currency transfers from South Africa or by acquiring approved inward-listed instruments based on foreign reference assets or issued by foreign entities listed on the JSE Ltd.

The Coega Industrial Development Zone (IDZ) was designed in 2002 and is a key project for the Department of Trade and Industry and the Eastern Cape Provincial Government.

By July 2010, R2,8 billion of government funding was spent. About 90% of the funding was spent on infrastructure programmes such as road construction, earthworks, electricity, water and sewers, factory buildings and offices. The Coega IDZ is designed to attract private-sector investment in export-orientated industries. It aims to create jobs within the IDZ, promote the use of domestic industries outside Coega and boost growth through increased exports, technology transfer and increased employment. A number of private investments had been secured: 24 private commitments of R49 billion had been finalised and eight investors with R480 million invested were operational by mid-2010.



- Foreign companies, governments and institutions may list instruments, including derivative instruments, based on foreign reference assets, on South Africa's bond and securities exchanges.
- Institutional investors are required to report on a quarterly basis on the allocation of assets according to the major asset classes and provide information from institutions in excess of the foreign-asset limit on proposed portfolio adjustments to bring foreign asset levels back in line.

Effective February 2009, South African institutional investors may invest in rand-denominated instruments issued abroad as well as instruments issued by South African corporates in the offshore market, on condition that the institutional investor remains within its applicable foreign portfolio investment allowance.

As from February 2010, private equity funds that are members of the South African Venture Capital Association, mandated to invest into Africa, may apply to the Excon of the SARB for an annual approval to invest in Africa.

With effect from 1 March 2010, authorised dealers are able to acquire direct and indirect foreign exposure up to a macro-prudential limit of 25% of their total liabilities, excluding total shareholder's equity.

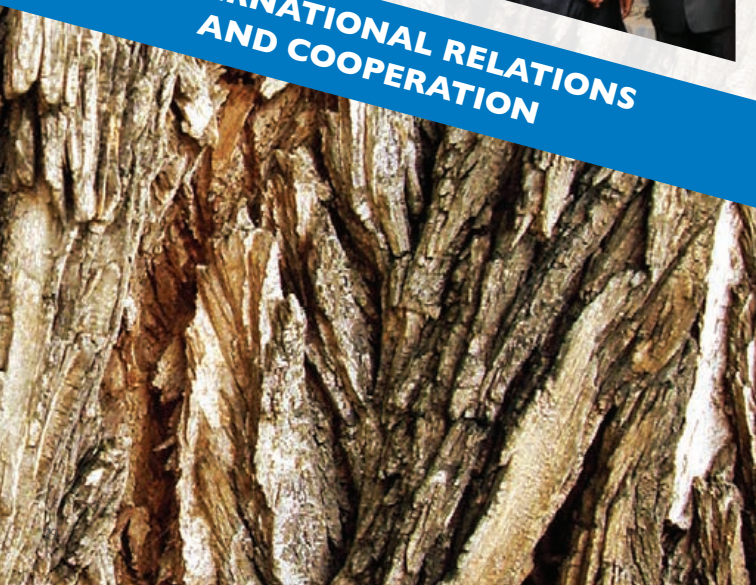
JSE Limited

The JSE Limited is licensed as an exchange under the Securities Services Act, 2004 and is Africa's premier exchange. It has operated as a marketplace for the trading of financial products for nearly 120 years. In this time, the JSE has evolved from a traditional floor-based equities trading market to a modern securities exchange providing fully electronic trading, clearing and settlement in equities, financial and agricultural derivatives and other associated instruments. The JSE is also a major provider of financial information.





INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS AND COOPERATION





Pocket Guide to South Africa 2010/11

INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS AND COOPERATION

The Department of International Relations and Cooperation's priorities are outlined in the Medium Term Strategic Framework for 2009 – 2014. They include:

- continuing to prioritise the African continent
- strengthening political and economic integration of the Southern African Development Community (SADC)
- strengthening South-South relations
- strengthening relations with strategic formations of the North
- strengthening political and economic relations
- participating in the global system of governance.

South Africa maintains diplomatic relations with countries and organisations through 124 missions in 107 countries abroad and through the accreditation of more than 160 countries and organisations resident in South Africa.

South Africa and Africa

The focus of South Africa's engagements on the African continent is to promote development, contribute to the resolution of conflicts and build an environment in which socio-economic development can take place.

African Union (AU)

The AU is Africa's premier institution and principal organisation for promoting the continent's accelerated socio-economic integration, which will lead to greater unity and solidarity between African countries and peoples. South Africa was instrumental in establishing the AU and its organs, which are the:

- Assembly
- Executive Council
- specialised technical committees
- financial institutions
- Permanent Representatives Committee
- Peace and Security Council (PSC)
- Pan-African Parliament (PAP)
- Economic, Social and Cultural Council
- Court of Justice
- African Court on Human and People's Rights
- African Commission on Human and People's Rights.

The financial institutions, the African Central Bank and African Monetary Fund, and the African Court of Justice still have to be operationalised.

Through active interventions in the Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC), Ethiopia/Eritrea, Côte d'Ivoire and Sudan, South Africa supports peace and security efforts in Africa.

The PAP occupies its current temporary premises in Midrand, Johannesburg. Preparations are underway to identify a suitable site and construct the permanent headquarters of the PAP in South Africa.

The AU has made notable progress towards the political and economic integration of the continent:

- the AU has developed the PSC, which is responsible for the resolution of conflicts, peacekeeping and post-conflict reconstruction in conjunction with the United Nations (UN)
- a common defence policy has been adopted, which includes a Standby Force, with a nucleus of five brigades, one from each region
- the Human and Peoples' Rights Court has been established
- the Protocol on the Rights of Women in Africa and the Declaration on Gender Equality is being implemented
- the Protocol on the Court of Justice is underway.

New Partnership for Africa's Development (Nepad)

South Africa played a role in the establishment of Nepad and the African Peer Review Mechanism (APRM), and hosted the secretariats of these two bodies. Nepad, as a blueprint for Africa's socio-economic development, represents the incarnation of the objectives of the AU at a practical level to intensify the struggle against poverty and underdevelopment.

Nepad remains the main frame of reference for intra-African relations and Africa's partnerships with international partners such as the European Union (EU)-AU Strategic Partnership, Forum for Africa China Partnership, the G8, New Africa Asia Strategic Partnership (NAASP) and the Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development.

The primary objective of Nepad is to eradicate poverty, halt the marginalisation of Africa in the globalisation process, promote the empowerment and economic integration of women and achieve the millennium development goals (MDGs).

The underlying principles of Nepad are:

- Accountability: Nepad recognises the importance of good political, economic and corporate governance in creating the conditions for development, with African governments embracing greater accountability to their constituents.



Pocket Guide to South Africa 2010/11

INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS AND COOPERATION

Nepad also seeks to base Africa's partnership with the North on mutual accountability.

- **Ownership:** Nepad is a long-term vision that is African-led and -owned. Ownership should be promoted through broad and deep participation by all sectors of society, and by tapping into indigenous knowledge/expertise to define needs and solutions.
- **Partnership:** While Nepad is a partnership between and among Africans, it seeks to accelerate sustainable development in Africa through partnerships with the South, and to forge a new partnership with the developed North that changes the unequal relationship with Africa.

Through Nepad, Africa expanded its development priorities. Development and funding in agriculture, information and communications technology, science and technology (S&T), infrastructure and education brought improvement to the quality of life for millions of Africans.

The 14th Session of the AU decided to integrate Nepad into the AU and established the Nepad Planning and Co-ordinating Agency (NPCA) as a technical body of the AU. This is an important step towards the acceleration of Nepad's implementation. The NPCA will focus on the implementation of regional integration programmes and projects. The AU/Nepad African Action Plan for 2010 to 2015 is a master plan for concrete projects that will serve as a catalyst for the development of the continent.

South Africa ranks among 14 AU member states of the APRM, which was established in 2003 as a voluntary instrument to ensure efficient delivery of services to the peoples of the continent, and promote good democratic, economic and corporate governance.

South Africa and the Southern African Development Community

SADC has been in existence since 1980, when it was formed as a loose alliance of nine majority-ruled states in southern Africa known as the Southern African Development Coordination Conference, with the main aim of coordinating development projects to lessen economic dependence on the then apartheid South Africa.

The founding member states are: Angola, Botswana, Lesotho, Malawi, Mozambique, Swaziland, Tanzania, Zambia and Zimbabwe.

As a community of nations, SADC has had to work together in confronting various challenges of political and socio-economic nature.

The year 2010 saw elections in, among other countries, Mauritius and Tanzania.

The Free Trade Agreement, which was launched in 2008, is part of SADC's ongoing efforts to create strong relations with southern African countries through trade. SADC also aims to create a regional customs union.

Asia and Australasia

South Africa and Indonesia were instrumental in the launch of the New Asian-African Strategic Partnership (NAASP) in Bandung in 2005 on the 50th anniversary of the Bandung Conference, which cemented Afro-Asian solidarity. NAASP represents a commitment by heads of state and government to help build closer economic ties between Africa and Asia.

South Africa continues to strengthen its relations with the region through increased two-way trade; personal exchanges between high-level dignitaries; and the finalisation of new instruments of cooperation in the S&T fields, through technology transfer, investments and overseas development assistance (ODA) in capacity-building.

While Japan, Malaysia and Taiwan already rank among the foremost sources of foreign direct investment in South Africa, the significance of China and India, as sources of investment, is growing. South Africa's multinational companies are finding attractive investment opportunities in Australia, China, Indonesia and Thailand in diverse fields such as mining, minerals processing, electronic media and the petrochemical industry.

South Africa also plays a leading role in the Indian Ocean Rim Association for Regional Cooperation, which creates an opportunity for countries of the South to serve their economic interests.

Apart from strengthening trilateral cooperation, India, Brazil, South Africa (IBSA) countries are committed to collective efforts to reform the United Nations Security Council, as well as the international financial architecture and to take joint steps to mitigate the effects of the global financial crisis. The three countries have also agreed to redouble their efforts to promote transport interconnectivity through the adoption of cooperative maritime and aviation frameworks that will assist

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2010/11

INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS AND COOPERATION

in facilitating the new intra-IBSA trade target of US\$25 billion by 2015.

South Africa enjoys wide-ranging multilateral relations with Australia and New Zealand.

The Middle East

The Department of International Relations and Cooperation distinguishes between two clearly identifiable subregions in the Middle East. There is the Levant, which comprises Israel, Iraq, Jordan, Lebanon, Palestine and Syria, and, on the other hand, the Arabian/Persian Gulf Region, consisting of the member states of the Gulf Cooperation Council, namely Bahrain, Kuwait, Oman, Qatar, Saudi Arabia, the United Arab Emirates (UAE), Iran and Yemen.

The Middle East is an important economic region as it occupies a unique geopolitical position in the tricontinental hub of Europe, Asia and Africa.

South Africa's leading trade partners in the region are Saudi Arabia, Iran, Kuwait, Qatar, Israel and the UAE.

South Africa supports a just, equitable and comprehensive peace process in the Middle East and an end to the illegal occupation of land that has led to conflict and violence between the peoples of the region.

The Americas

The overall bilateral relationship with the United States of America (USA) remains strong with cooperation expanding on matters of common interest and mutual benefit.

One of the highlights in South African-US relations is that the USA has identified with South Africa's strategic priorities and is making an effort to align its programmes and projects with these.

In May 2010, South Africa's 2 000-m² pavilion at Shanghai Expo in China was officially opened. Shanghai Expo's theme of "Better City, Better Life" was showcased by the pavilion depicting the vibrancy of South African cities and urban culture. With the theme of "It's Time! Ke Nako!" South Africa's pavilion invited visitors to learn more about the offerings of modern South Africa as a strategic partner with China. More than 3,5 million people attended the South African pavilion with more than 10 million passing through the joint African pavilion.



At the end of 2010, South Africa was invited to become the fifth member of the BRICS group of developing economies, which includes Brazil, Russia, China and India. As full member, South Africa attended the annual BRICS Summit in Beijing, China, in April. South Africa expects to gain substantial trade and investment benefits as a member of this group.



At the meeting between presidents Jacob Zuma and Barack Obama in Washington during April 2010, in the margins of the Nuclear Security Summit, President Obama recommitted to ensuring that the strategic partnership with South Africa is strengthened.

The annual consultations between South Africa and Canada, first launched in 2003 as a result of a Declaration of Intent signed between the two countries, remain an effective vehicle for managing relations in all spheres. The agenda has expanded in scope and now includes ODA, trade and investment and cooperation in the fields of sport, arts and culture, S&T, safety and security, minerals and energy, agriculture, transport, Africa and multilateral issues.

Bilateral relations with Latin America and the Caribbean will continue advancing the development agenda of the South and the strengthening of cooperation among developing countries through active participation in groupings of the South at regional, interregional and multilateral levels.

The Caribbean

South Africa enjoys cordial relations with the countries of the Caribbean and Latin America. The South African embassy in Cuba is accredited to the Dominican Republic, while the South African high commission in Kingston, Jamaica, is accredited to 15 Caricom countries. A high commission, headed by a *chargé d'affaires*, was established in Trinidad and Tobago in 2006.

The majority of the people of the Caribbean are of African descent and thus have strong historical and cultural links with the continent of Africa. South Africa's endeavours, in conjunction with the AU, to strengthen cooperation between Africa and the African Diaspora in the Caribbean, have added impetus to bilateral and multilateral relations.

Europe

The EU is a unique international organisation comprising 27 member states. Developed primarily as a single market, it is the largest economy in the world. The EU has a common trade policy, a common agricultural and fisheries policy and a regional policy (to assist its underdeveloped regions). Thirteen member states have also adopted a single currency, the Euro. The EU has also developed the Common Foreign and Security Policy and the European Security and Defence Policy.

Since 1994, building on shared values and mutual interests, South Africa and the EU have developed a comprehensive partnership based on the Trade, Development and Cooperation Agreement (TDCA). The TDCA, which was signed in 1999, provisionally came into force in January 2000, and, fully ratified on 1 May 2004, governs South Africa's relations with the EU.

Through this agreement a partnership has been built, which rests on five pillars: trade, political dialogue, development cooperation, economic cooperation and cooperation in other areas.

The TDCA provides for an FTA by 2012. The Trade Chapter of the agreement provisionally came into force in January 2000. The TDCA also provides the legal basis for continued EU support for development-cooperation activities in South Africa. This support is channelled through the European Programme for Reconstruction and Development, which is the largest single development programme in South Africa that is financed by foreign donors. Further assistance from the EU comes in the form of soft loans from the European Investment Bank.

A key outcome during the South Africa-EU Summit in September 2009, was the signing of the amending agreement to the South Africa-EU TDCA. The amending agreement included 35 new and revised non-trade chapter articles, which were negotiated following the mid-term review of the TDCA.

Germany has made substantial new investments in the South African economy since the 1994 democratic election and remains one of the country's most important trading partners.

The United Kingdom (UK) consistently occupies the third position in terms of South African exports. With the number of

tourists from the UK per year approaching half a million, the UK is one of South Africa's most important overseas tourism markets. In March 2010, President Jacob Zuma paid a state visit to the UK.

South Africa and France cooperate in various multilateral forums, particularly to improve peace and security on the African continent and support the advancement of global governance. President Zuma paid a state visit to France in March 2011.

The strategic nature of South African-Russian relations has been significantly consolidated over recent years through continued high-level political dialogue with the Russian Federation. In August 2010, President Zuma paid his first official visit to Russia.

United Nations

South Africa remains an active participant in ongoing discussions on the reform of the UN and believes that the multilateral system should be fully engaged in the endeavour for human development and poverty eradication, starting with the achievement of the MDGs; the common struggle to address environmental degradation; the pursuit of an overarching human-rights agenda; the promotion of democracy and good governance; and all efforts to combat terrorism and the proliferation of weapons of mass destruction and small arms.

As a party to the UN conventions on climate change, desertification and biodiversity, South Africa is committed to reducing poverty and the loss of biodiversity. South Africa is also firmly committed to the protection of the oceans and the sustainable management of its marine resources. South Africa will host the 17th UN Conference of Parties on climate change in 2011.

South Africa continues to reinforce its role as an active and substantive role player on disarmament, non-proliferation and arms-control issues at national, regional and international levels.

The European Union (EU) is South Africa's largest trading and investment partner with the country in turn prominently placed within the EU's top-20 trading partners.

Focused on poverty alleviation, the EU is South Africa's largest development partner. The EU (including its member states and the European Investment Bank) annually commits over R6 billion in grants and loans to economic and social development, as well as governance programmes in South Africa.



Pocket Guide to South Africa 2010/11

INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS AND COOPERATION

It actively participates in the various nuclear disarmament and non-proliferation forums.

United Nations Development Programme (UNDP)

The UNDP has an office in Pretoria, which is headed by the resident representative, who is also the resident UN co-ordinator for all UN operational activities for development in South Africa.

Commonwealth

The Commonwealth comprises 53 member countries on every continent and major ocean, making up a quarter of the world's population and generating 20% of global trade.

Members range from micro-states in Polynesia to members of the G8, from the smallest and poorest to the richest and most populous, with cross-cutting affiliations straddling the North-South divide.

The Commonwealth is united by its shared ideals and common traditions manifested in similar structures of governance; public administration and law; and a common working language, commercial and business practices, and understanding. It is an important multilateral institution, both uniting and serving its member countries and providing a lobby on global issues.

Its programmes of action, such as the Commonwealth Fund for Technical Cooperation, the Commonwealth Youth Programme and the Commonwealth Foundation, are focused on capacity-building, economic and social development, the

In October 2010, South Africa won a non-permanent seat on the United Nations Security Council (UNSC) for the second time. The country served on the UNSC in 2007/08.

The United Nations General Assembly also elected Germany, India, and Colombia to two-year seats on the council, commencing 1 January 2011.

Each non-permanent country sits on the council for two years alongside the permanent powers – Britain, China, France, Russia and the United States of America – who have the right to veto any council resolution.

South Africa will be guided by its commitment to multilateralism, advancement of the African Agenda and the peaceful resolution of conflict.





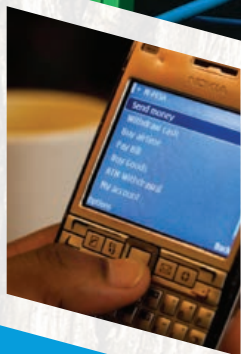
removal of disparities in living standards across the world and the alleviation of poverty and illiteracy.

Non-Aligned Movement (NAM)

The NAM with its 114 member states is the largest political grouping of countries outside of the UN, making it an important lobby group of developing countries in global affairs.

South Africa formally joined the movement in 1994 and has played a leading role ever since.





COMMUNICATIONS



Pocket Guide to South Africa 2010/11

COMMUNICATIONS

With a network that is 99% digital and includes the latest in fixed-line, wireless and satellite communications, South Africa has the most developed telecommunications network in Africa.

The country harnessed all its resources to ensure the successful hosting of the world's biggest sport event, the 2010 FIFA World Cup™. Over R1,5 billion was spent on event broadcasting and telecommunications.

Access

The Department of Communications' mandate is to create a favourable information and communications technology (ICT) environment, ensuring that South Africa has the capacity to advance its socio-economic development goals and support the renewal of Africa and the building of a better world.

In March 2010, the Radio Frequency Spectrum Policy was approved. The policy seeks, among other things, to:

- ensure the efficient use and management of the radio frequency spectrum
- facilitate the achievement of key socio-economic objectives, such as increasing access to ICT
- create an information society via wireless technologies
- ensure access to broadband services and public service broadcasting content.

The National Broadband Policy for South Africa was gazetted in July 2010.

The policy seeks to address the availability, accessibility and affordability of broadband, build an information society and promote the uptake and usage of broadband.

In May 2010, the Department of Communications hosted a community television policy workshop to develop a broad framework to enable the successful launch of community TV in South Africa.

The Broadcasting Digital Migration (BDM) Policy for South Africa was approved in July 2008 and on 30 October 2008, the digital signal was switched on. The official switch-over to digital is expected to take place in 2013.

One of the major impacts of the BDM Policy is its contribution to industrial growth in South Africa. The implementation of the Set Top Boxes (STBs) Manufacturing Sector Development Strategy was finalised in 2010.

The focus will be on providing subsidies to poor TV-owning households to enable them to buy STBs.

The Department of Communications participates in the New Partnership for Africa's Development Information and Communications Technology Broadband Infrastructure Network for Africa, which includes the Eastern Africa Submarine Cable System (EASSy) Project.



The 9 900-km long EASSy cable links South Africa to Sudan and provides for landing stations in countries along the coast of eastern Africa. The cable is connected to adjacent landlocked countries and will have a lifespan of 25 years.

In August 2010, with upgraded design, the cable entered commercial operation ahead of schedule and about 10% below its budgeted \$300 million cost. The EASSy cable landing in South Africa is at Mtunzini, in KwaZulu-Natal.

Mobile communications

In recent years, South Africa has witnessed tremendous growth in the cellphone industry. South Africa has five operators, namely Vodacom, MTN, Cell C, Virgin Mobile and Telkom.

Internet

In 2010, the number of South African Internet users passed the five-million mark for the first time, finally breaking through the 10% mark in Internet penetration for the country. This was the key finding of the *Internet Access in South Africa 2010* study conducted by World Wide Worx released in January 2010.

Telkom

Telkom has been operating as a commercial company since October 1991 and is the largest provider of communications services in Africa, according to operating revenue and assets.

Neotel

Neotel is South Africa's first converged telecommunications network operator. This means that voice, data and Internet is offered over a single connection.

Postal sector

The Government-subsidised South African Post Office (Sapo) is required to provide a basic letter service that is reasonably accessible to all.

Sapo delivers almost six million letters per day to 11 million addresses in South Africa. It has more than 2 500 outlets covering the length and breadth of South Africa.

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2010/11

COMMUNICATIONS

In March 2010, 77% of South Africans with Internet access were shopping online, according to a survey released by Mastercard Worldwide.

Music and movies topped the list of purchases, followed by airline tickets, home appliances and electronics.



The media

South Africa's Bill of Rights guarantees the freedom of the press and other media.

Broadcasting

The independence of the public broadcaster, the South African Broadcasting Corporation (SABC), is guaranteed by legislation. The SABC is being corporatised and restructured to better fulfil its mandate.

Radio

The SABC's national radio network comprises 18 radio stations. Fifteen of these are dedicated specifically to public-service broadcasting and include 11 full spectrum stations, one in each of the official languages of South Africa, a cultural service for the Indian community broadcasting in English, a regional community station broadcasting in isiXhosa and English and a community station broadcasting in the !Xu and Khwe languages of the Khoisan people of the Northern Cape. The SABC boasts three stations in its commercial portfolio. They are 5fm, MetroFM and Good Hope FM.

SABC News provides news and current affairs services to both SABC radio and television. For its domestic coverage, SABC News has 13 editorial offices, while world news is provided by strategically placed news bureaus, foreign correspondents and international news agencies.

Channel Africa Network comprises four language services, reaching millions of listeners throughout Africa. Broadcasts are in English, French, Kiswahili, Portuguese, Chinyanja and Silozi. The network targets audiences in Africa and the Indian Ocean islands, and concentrates on providing programmes with African content.

The Independent Communications Authority of South Africa has granted licences to the following private radio stations:

- Radio Algoa
- Classic FM

- Kaya FM
- YFM
- Highveld Stereo
- Radio 702
- Radio Jacaranda
- Radio Oranje
- East Coast Radio
- P4
- Cape Talk MW
- Radio KFM

Community radio stations have a huge potential for supporting, among other things, cultural and educational information exchanges. These radio stations use all indigenous languages, ensuring that people receive information in languages they understand.

Television

The SABC's television network comprises three television channels – all free-to-air. SABC Television reaches a weekly audience of 26,6 million adults aged 15 years and more. South African television is broadcast in all 11 official languages and in Sign Language.

In October 1998, the country's first privately owned free-to-air television channel, e.tv, started operations.

M-Net became South Africa's first private subscription television service when it launched in 1986. Today, it broadcasts its array of general entertainment and niche channels to subscribers in more than 50 countries across the African continent and adjacent Indian Ocean islands.

MultiChoice Africa (MCA) was formed in 1995 to manage the subscriber services of its sister company, M-Net. It became the first African company on the continent to offer digital satellite broadcasting. In July 2008, Multichoice launched high-definition television, the first in Africa. MultiChoice provides digital media entertainment, content and services to multiple devices, which include pay TV subscriber services to more than 1,5 million customers.

MCA is 100% owned by the MIH Group, which is listed on the JSE Ltd, the Nasdaq in New York, and AEX in Amsterdam.

The pay television provider Top TV was launched in 2010.

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2010/11

COMMUNICATIONS

Print

Technically, the local print media rate among the best in the world. This is one reason why newspapers and magazines have held their own in a volatile information era, identified by the vast development of various new forms of media-delivery platforms via the Internet.

South African newspapers and magazines are mainly organised into several major publishing houses: Media24 (part of Naspers, the largest media group in Africa), the Irish-based Independent News & Media (Pty) Ltd group, Caxton Publishers & Printers Ltd, and Avusa Ltd. Other important media players include M&G Media Ltd; the Natal Witness Printing & Publishing Company (Pty) Ltd; Primedia Publishing Ltd; Ramsay, Son and Parker (Pty) Ltd; and Kagiso Media.

Since 1994, the major press groups have embarked on programmes to boost Black Economic Empowerment in media ownership.

Newspapers

In August 2010, the Audit Bureau Circulations (ABC) of South Africa reported that total newspaper performance declined by 163 000 copies between March and June 2010 when compared to the previous corresponding period.

Daily newspapers reflected a decline of 6,6% or 106 000 copies. Digital circulation, albeit off a small base, grew five-fold. In general, English titles declined more sharply than Afrikaans or vernacular titles.

Weekly newspapers declined by 6,6%, although the decline seemed to be slowing.

Weekend newspapers declined by 2,7%.

Community newspapers reflected a solid and stable performance, with growth mainly the result of new entrants. Free newspapers remained static.

Magazines

Between March and June 2010, despite the uncertain economic climate, the number of new entrants was significant. Total ABC membership grew from 759 titles at 31 March 2010

In 2010, the Nat Nakasa Award for Courageous Journalism was awarded to Terry Bell.



to 794 at 30 June 2010, with 40 titles joining and five closures or resignations.

Total magazine circulation showed considerable growth, mainly the result of two significant Custom TV titles reporting.

News agencies

The national news agency, the South African Press Association, is a cooperative, non-profit organisation.

The main foreign news agencies operating in South Africa are Reuters, *Agence France-Presse*, Associated Press, *Deutsche Presse-Agentur* and United Press International.

Media diversity

The independent Media Development and Diversity Agency (MDDA) is jointly funded by government, the media and other donors.

Headed by a nine-member board, the MDDA works to foster diversity, particularly in community and small commercial media, and to redress imbalances in the industry.

Biggest weekly and daily newspapers

January to June 2010

Weekly papers

Sunday Times	461 433
Soccer Laduma	245 704
Rapport	260 897
Mail & Guardian	47 156
Sunday Sun	233 162

Daily papers

Daily Sun	484 588
City Press	176 025
The Times	124 541
Sowetan	125 902
Beeld	91 772

Source: Audit Bureau of Circulations

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2010/11

COMMUNICATIONS

Above-the-line adspend in R millions

Category	1999 R'm	%	2008 R'm	%	2009 R'm	%
Daily newspapers	1 241,5	15,6	3 348,4	14,2	3 266,8	13,4
Weekend newspapers	505,5	6,3	1 555,6	6,3	1 573,2	6,4
Black/coloured/Asian papers	164,6	2,1		included in other categories		
Community newspapers	453,3	5,7	1 520,7	6,2	1 536,3	6,3
Consumer magazines	780,2	9,8	2 206,7	9,0	2 041,9	8,4
Trade, technical, financial	337,0	4,2	531,4	2,2	484,6	2,0
Total print	3 482,2	43,7	9 301,8	37,9	8 902,8	36,4
TV	3 236,6	40,7	9 964,7	40,5	10 487,6	42,9
Radio	925,7	11,6	3 344,8	13,6	3 041,0	12,4
Cinema	66,1	0,8	357,5	1,5	299,4	1,2
Outdoor	250,5	3,1	1 079,9	4,4	1 075,1	4,4
Direct mail (unaddressed)		not monitored	150,5	0,6	151,2	0,6
Internet		not monitored	375,9	1,5	468,9	1,9
Total	7 961,0	100	24 575,0	100	24 426,1	100

Rounding off occurs. **Important note:** 2008 revised upward from original data published in 2009 Media Facts. Excludes self-promotion by media.

This table reads: According to Multimedia, TV accounted for R3 236,6 million (40,7%) of the R7 961,0 million spent on the media in 1999. This rose to R9 964,7 million (40,5%) in 2008 and R10 487,6 (42,9%) in 2009.

Source: Nielsen Media Research's Multimedia



Former South African editor Laurence Gandar was in May 2010 declared a World Press Freedom Hero by the International Press Institute (IPI). He was posthumously honoured at a ceremony in September 2010 for his long years of dedication to the press in South Africa and his profoundly transformative effect on the political landscape of the country.

Gandar was editor of the Johannesburg-based *Rand Daily Mail* from 1957 to 1969.

Gandar is the second South African journalist to be selected as an IPI World Press Freedom Hero. In 2000, South African newspaper editor Percy Qoboza was honoured with the award.

The MDDA awarded its first grants to community and small commercial media projects in January 2004.

By mid-2010, the MDDA had funded 273 projects, amounting to R77 million worth of grant support. These included supporting community radio stations, community newspapers and other community initiatives with skills, seed funding, capacity-building and media diversity and literacy, among other things. The MDDA aims to expand its focus on rural and poor communities that have limited or no access to information.

Advertising

Several South African agencies are active in Africa. They often receive significant international accolades for their work. The industry is self-regulated through the Advertising Standards Authority.





TRANSPORT



Building on the successful delivery of the World Cup transport infrastructure, government aims to take forward the delivery of major projects such as the:

- completion of the new petroleum pipeline
- completion of the Gautrain in 2011
- expansion of the Bus Rapid Transit (BRT) System.

The key deliverables of the transport sector broadly include:

- reducing transport costs
- improving safety
- reducing the backlog of road and rail infrastructure
- enhancing accessibility to and affordability of quality public transport in both urban and rural areas
- optimising freight logistics to improve energy efficiency.

The Moloto Corridor is another project that the Department of Transport identified as a priority. The project was registered as a private-public partnership.

In 2010, the department released details of a proposed high-speed rapid rail link between Durban and Johannesburg.

Policy and initiatives

National Transport Master Plan (Natmap)

In May 2010, the Department of Transport presented Parliament with the R750-million Natmap, which includes linking Johannesburg to Durban and Polokwane via rapid train networks. Natmap includes expanding the Port of Saldanha, doubling the Huguenot Tunnel outside Paarl and expanding the Port of Cape Town. Part of Natmap is to form partnerships with the private sector to help fund the projects and lower the burden on taxpayers. Cabinet initiated the Natmap in 2007 to develop and establish a multimodal transport system to meet South Africa's needs up to 2050.

In 2011, government started rolling out the S'hamba Sonke (walking together) Programme, an innovative nationwide drive to focus on the maintenance of the secondary road infrastructure using labour-intensive methods of construction and maintenance. It set aside R6,4 billion in 2011/12, R7,5 billion in 2012/13 and R8,2 billion for 2013/14, amounting to a total of R22,3 billion in the medium term. At least 70 000 jobs were expected to be created in 2011 through this programme, which includes a massive pothole patching programme that will be rolled out nationally.



Natmap's goals include:

- maximising the use of existing infrastructure facilities
- developing future infrastructure facilities
- developing an up-to-date and accurate central land-use/transportation data bank.

Public Transport Strategy (2007 – 2020)

The Public Transport Strategy aims to accelerate the improvement in public transport by establishing integrated rapid public transport networks (IRPTNs), which will introduce priority rail corridors and BRT systems in cities.

The essential feature of the Public Transport Strategy is the phased extension of mode-based vehicle recapitalisation into IRPTNs. These networks comprise an integrated package of rapid rail, BRT, taxi and metered taxi priority networks, especially in major cities. The strategy is expected to improve public-transport services for over half the country's population.

Full special needs and wheelchair access for all trunk-corridor rail- and road-vehicles will also be implemented.

Electronic National Traffic Information System (eNaTIS)

eNaTIS is the official register for all vehicle, driver licence, contravention and accident data. The purpose of eNaTIS is to streamline the Department of Transport's motor-vehicle registration services. The system delineates the life cycle of a vehicle from the factory floor to the scrap yard.

In 2009, more than 177 000 000 transactions were performed on eNaTIS. This represented an increase of 12,67% compared to 2008's 157 340 912 transactions. By the end of December 2009, a total of 433 399 043 transactions had been performed on the system since its introduction in May 2007.

Compared to 2008, new vehicle registrations fell by 29,57% in 2009, while used vehicle registrations increased with 0,35%.

At the end of December 2009, South Africa's live vehicle population stood at 9 587 781.

Through eNaTIS, the department is able to eliminate duplicate vehicle registration and cloning.

The Department of Transport agreed with Mozambique, Swaziland and Namibia to make eNaTIS available to them to harmonise vehicle registration in the region.

President Jacob Zuma opened King Shaka International Airport, north of Durban, in May 2010. Facts about the airport include:



- 4 900 t of steel were used to build the passenger terminal – about half the amount of steel used to build the Eiffel Tower in Paris
- there is a choice of 10 service-providers to hire a car from
- the floor space of the passenger terminal is the same size as 27 soccer fields
- there are 72 counters where passengers can book in for their flights
- the runway is 3,7 km long
- there are 6 500 undercover parking bays and 3 000 sheltered parking spaces outside the airport
- provision has been made for 50 motorists who want to quickly drop off or collect a passenger
- there is provision for 25 taxis
- visitors have a choice of 12 restaurants
- there are 30 other shops to buy anything from jewellery to clothes.

From September 2010, vehicles travelling between these countries are registered on the eNaTIS. This ensures that none of these countries are used to reregister stolen vehicles, which are taken across South Africa's borders.

Agencies

The following entities report to the Minister of Transport: the South African National Roads Agency Limited (Sanral), South African Maritime Safety Authority, Cross-Border Road Transport Agency, South African Civil Aviation Authority, Road Accident Fund, Urban Transport Fund, Air Traffic and Navigation Services Company, Airports Company South Africa (Acsa) and the National Transport Information System.

Transnet Limited

Transnet is a focused freight-transport and logistics company wholly owned by the South African Government.

It comprises the following operating divisions:

- Transnet Freight Rail (TFR) – the freight rail division
- Transnet Rail Engineering – the rolling stock maintenance business
- Transnet National Ports Authority (TNPA) – which fulfils the landlord function for South Africa's port system

- Transnet Port Terminals – which manages port and cargo terminal operations in the nation's leading ports
- Transnet pipelines – the fuel and gas pipeline business, which pumps and manages the storage of petroleum and gas products through its network of high-pressure, long-distance pipelines.

Infrastructure investments are expected to create over 300 000 jobs and boost economic growth in four provinces in the country. The utility's projects are expected to contribute just over 4,8% to the country's gross domestic product (GDP) by 2018. Outlining its five-year strategy in March 2010, Transnet indicated that more than R93 billion would be spent on infrastructure expansion and other projects to improve customer services and ensure financial sustainability in future.

Road transport

South Africa has the longest road network of any country in Africa.

Sanral is responsible for the design, construction, management and maintenance of South Africa's national road network, including toll and non-toll roads that in 2010 included: 1 573 km of dual carriageway, 550 km of four-lane undivided roads; 14 047 km of two-lane, single roads; 1 288 km of toll roads; and 1 832 km of state toll roads.

In its endeavour to continue with the expansion and maintenance of the comprehensive national road network, Sanral will continue with selective expansion of the toll-road network.

About 1 288 km of the tolled sections of the national road have been concessioned to private companies to develop, operate and maintain.

In 2009, Sanral awarded construction contracts worth R18 billion.

Minibus taxis are responsible for 65% of the 2,5 billion annual passenger trips in urban areas, as well as a high percentage of rural and intercity transport.

Starting in June 2011, the Gautrain will move at least 40 000 people hourly on the commuter line between Johannesburg and Pretoria stress-free and in less than 40 minutes! The system includes 125 feeder buses operated by a consortium that includes taxi operators.



Buses and trains account for 21% and 14% respectively of all public transport.

Taxi Recapitalisation Programme (TRP)

Government's TRP is underpinned by a strong desire to have an integrated public-transport system.

The main objectives of the TRP are to have a taxi industry that supports a strong economy that puts the passenger first and that meets the country's socio-economic objectives.

Government recognises the critical role played by the industry, and endeavours to ensure its growth and sustainability. The TRP is not only about scrapping old taxi vehicles, but is also concerned with the sustainability and effective regulation of the industry. It is a direct response to the recommendations of the National Taxi Task Team to consider specific interventions to turn around the taxi industry.

Compliance with the necessary basic requirements include possession of legitimate documentation and securing the appropriate type of vehicles, specifically new taxi vehicles that comply with safety specifications.

By May 2010, more than 38 000 old taxi vehicles were scrapped, with more than R1,7 billion paid out to operators.

Bus Rapid Transit

BRT systems provide an exciting and innovative mechanism for implementing high-quality public transport networks that operate on exclusive right of way and incorporate current bus and minibus operators with no source of income or jobs.

By June 2010, the BRT was operational in Johannesburg, Pretoria, Bloemfontein, Port Elizabeth and Cape Town. The system was part of 2010 World Cup plans but it is also an immediate legacy of the 2010 World Cup. The BRT System's benefits outweigh its total cost. It addresses congestion, drives economic growth, and is world-class and affordable.

Since 30 August 2009, Rea Vaya has become a part of South African public transport culture and vocabulary.

Highlights about Rea Vaya are:

- passenger numbers have increased from 11 800 per day to 34 000 per day
- 1 100 trips are operated daily
- 18 500 km are travelled daily
- 280 000 litres of diesel are used monthly

- 1 000 people have been employed in the operations
- 307 000 passengers were transported during the World Cup and stadiums were cleared way ahead of FIFA benchmark times.

Passenger Rail Agency of South Africa (Prasa)

Prasa was launched in March 2009. It replaced the South African Rail Commuter Corporation. The establishment of Prasa brought the possibility to provide integrated transport solutions through its control of commuter rail, inter-city, long-distance rail and road-based long-distance buses.

The presence of buses within Prasa gives it the kind of flexibility to respond effectively to passenger demands with the real option to provide feeder and distribution services.

Prasa transports more than 645 million passengers per year across Metrorail (95%), Shosholoza Meyl (2,5%) and Autopax via 468 stations in cities and throughout the country.

Ahead of the 2010 FIFA World Cup™, Prasa invested R7 billion in the refurbishment of 2 000 coaches, 780 of which were dedicated to the tournament. Some R1,4 billion was invested in the acquisition of 570 new buses for Autopax, most of which were chartered by FIFA. The buses transporting the 32 participating teams were supplied by Prasa.

Transnet Freight Rail

TFR has a 20 247-km rail network, of which about 1 500 km comprise heavy haul lines. The network connects the ports and hinterland of South Africa as well as the rail networks of the sub-Saharan region. TFR infrastructure represents about 80% of Africa's rail infrastructure.

It operates freight trains, serving customers in the following major segments:

- mining: coal, iron ore, manganese, granite, asbestos, chrome and non-ferrous metals
- manufacturing: chemicals, fuel and petroleum, fertiliser, cement, lime, iron steel and scrap

In September 2010, the Gautrain celebrated carrying one million train passengers since opening Phase One of the project. Within days of opening, in time for the World Cup, the Gautrain carried almost 80 000 passengers a week. After the World Cup, the service stabilised at nearly 50 000 passengers a week.



For most of the morning of 11 July 2010, ahead of the World Cup final between Spain and the Netherlands, an aircraft was touching down every two minutes at OR Tambo International Airport. On 11 and 12 July 2010, OR Tambo facilitated more than 1 400 aircraft movements, carrying well over 160 000 passengers. The total number of aircraft handled between 1 June and 12 July at the three main international airports amounted to 58 045, namely: OR Tambo (35 964), Cape Town (14 600) and King Shaka (7 481).



- agriculture and forestry: grain, stockfeed and milling, timber, paper and publishing, and fast-moving consumer goods
- containers and automotive: intermodal wholesale, automotive and industrial.

In 2009, TFR handled 177 Mt of freight, including critical cargo such as iron ore, coal and containers. Transnet will be investing R54,6 billion of its total five-year capital investment plan of R93,4 billion in rail infrastructure and in acquiring and upgrading rolling stock.

Civil aviation

Airports Company of South Africa

Acsa owns and operates the 10 principal airports, including the three major international airports in Johannesburg, Cape Town and Durban. The others are domestic airports in Bloemfontein, Port Elizabeth, East London, George, Kimberley, Upington and Pilanesberg. Other airports in South Africa include Lanseria (Midrand), Gateway (Polokwane), Nelspruit and Kruger (Mpumalanga).

In 2009/10, Acsa's total revenue grew by 12% to R3,5 billion.

Acsa handles more than 32 million passengers annually. The number is expected to rise to 40 million in 2013.

The 10 airports handle over 98% of the country's commercial air traffic.

South African Airways (SAA)

SAA has been in operation for more than 75 years and has recently been recognised by Skytrax as being among the top 15 airlines in the world for its product and service offering. It was also, for the seventh time in a row, voted the number one African airline and 11th in the world in business class.

In September 2010, SAA reported a group profit before tax of R596 million.

In June 2010, the Airports Company South Africa (Acsa) announced that it would be expanding its activities in India in the next few years. For the past four years, Acsa had been managing the airport in Mumbai with an Indian partner. Acsa's part of the profit is 10% and Acsa's income from the turnover in the 2009/10 financial year was R22 million. India plans to build a further 12 new airports and Acsa had contributed R166 million to the expansion.



SAA reported a bottom-line profit of R581 million, a 45% improvement from the previous year's net profit of R402 million.

SAA is the only non-stop service from the United States of America (USA) to South Africa, with daily departures from Washington DC and a daily direct service from New York.

SAA's local network includes connections to more than 20 South African destinations and more than 20 cities across the rest of the continent.

South Africa has a number of airlines flying between its major cities, and to some of its smaller ones, with fares ranging from first-class to cut-price economy. Flights can be booked online from anywhere in the world. Eight major domestic airlines operate in the country, as well as a number of smaller charter airline companies.

Ports

The TNPA is the largest port authority on the continent. It owns and manages South Africa's ports at Richards Bay, Durban, East London, Port Elizabeth, Mossel Bay, Cape Town, Saldanha and Ngqura.

Among its major investments for 2009/10, Transnet announced its R2,8-billion upgrading of Durban Harbour, which included the entrance channel being deepened and widened. Before, it could only accommodate ships slightly over the 4 000 20-foot equivalent unit (TEU) capacity, but now those of 8 000 TEU can dock there.

A further R4,4 billion was pumped into the Cape Town Container Terminal Expansion Project, which has boosted capacity from 700 000 TEU in 2007 to 900 000 TEU. There are plans to increase capacity even more to 1,4 million TEU. Cape Town's Berth 601, the first of its four berths to be expanded, has already been deepened to 15,5 m to accommodate larger vessels.



TRANSPORT

The TNPA provides suitable infrastructure as a conduit for the country's imports and exports. As port landlord, it is responsible for:

- developing and managing port properties
- developing, advising and implementing national port policies
- providing and maintaining port infrastructure (i.e. breakwaters, seawalls, channels, basins, quay walls and jetties), and the sustainability of ports and their environments
- coordinating marketing and promotional activities for each port.

The TNPA also has a control function, which includes:

- providing vessel-traffic control and navigational aids
- licensing and leasing terminals to operators
- monitoring the performance of port operators
- ensuring the orderly, efficient and reliable transfer of cargo and passengers between sea and land.

Commercial ports play a crucial role in South Africa's transport, logistics and socio-economic development. About 98% of South Africa's exports are conveyed by sea.

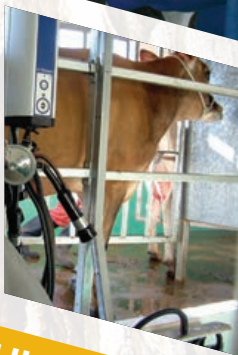
The National Ports Regulator, which was established in terms of the National Ports Act, 2005, is responsible for the economic regulation of the ports system, in line with government's strategic objectives to promote equity of access to ports and to monitor the activities of the TNPA. The regulator also promotes regulated competition, hears appeals and complaints and investigates such complaints.

The adoption and implementation of measures to enhance maritime security have resulted in South Africa being fully compliant with the International Ships and Ports Security Code since July 2004.

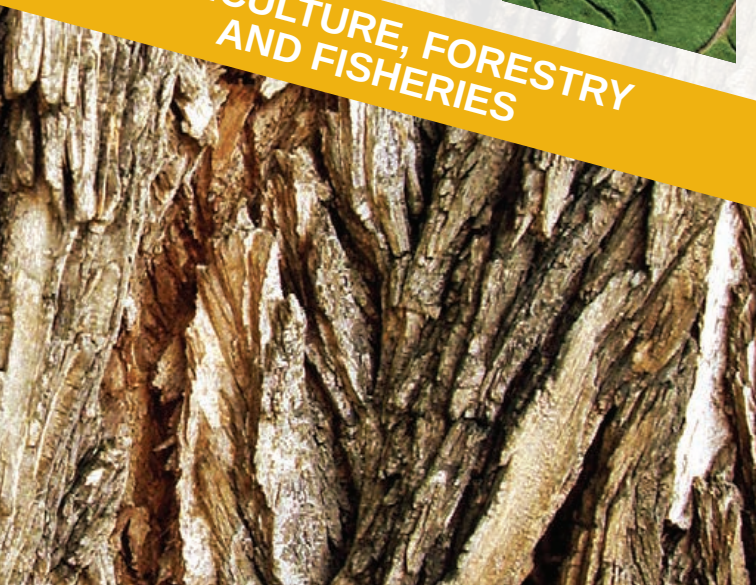
More than 60% of South Africa's liquid fuels-demand lies within the Durban-to-Johannesburg Corridor. The Durban-to-Johannesburg Pipeline became inadequate to transport the required volumes of petroleum products from the coast to the inland regions.



The Department of Energy in its Energy Security Master Plan included the construction of a bigger new multiproduct pipeline by Transnet. The National Energy Regulator of South Africa awarded Transnet the licence to build the 24-inch trunk-line pipeline, including the 16-inch inland network and two terminals in December 2007. The trunk line is expected to be completed by September 2011 and operational by December 2011.



**AGRICULTURE, FORESTRY
AND FISHERIES**



AGRICULTURE, FORESTRY AND FISHERIES

High-potential arable land comprises only 22% of total arable land. About 12% of the country's surface area can be used for crop production. Some 1,3 million hectares (ha) are under irrigation.

Agricultural activities range from intensive crop production and mixed farming to cattle ranching in the bushveld, and sheep farming in the more arid regions.

The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries is responsible for production and resource management; agricultural support services; trade and economic development; food safety and biosecurity; forestry; and marine aquaculture.

Economic contribution

Primary agriculture contributes about 3% to South Africa's gross domestic product (GDP) and about 7% to formal employment. However, there are strong linkages into the economy, so that the agro-industrial sector comprises about 12% of GDP.

For the past five years, agricultural exports have contributed on average about 6,5% of total South African exports. Exports increased from 5% (1988) to 46% (2009) of agricultural production.

The largest export groups are wine, citrus, maize, grapes, sugar, apples, pears and quinces. Other important export products are undermatured ethyl alcohol, avocados, pineapples, dates, preserved fruit and nuts, as well as hides and skins.

Production

Producer prices of agricultural products increased on average by 2,6% from 2008 to 2009. The weighted average price of field crops dropped by 7,4%. This was mainly the result of lower prices received for winter grains, oilseeds, summer grains, dry beans and cotton, which decreased by 24,3%; 20,7%; 9,5%; 8,4%; and 5,8%, respectively. Prices of vegetables, fruit and viticultural products increased by 42,3%; 6,8%; and 1,8%; respectively.

The weighted average price of animal products was 6,2% higher in 2009 than in 2008. Prices received for poultry and slaughtered stock increased by 12,9% and 3,7%, respectively, while the average price of pastoral products and dairy products decreased by 4,5% and 2,4%, respectively.

The demand for meat remained strong and meat prices increased between 8% and 15%.

Gross value of agricultural production, 2009 (R'000)	
Field crops	
Maize	16 346
Wheat	3 057
Hay	3 198
Grain sorghum	474
Sugar cane	4 769
Groundnuts	715
Tobacco	262
Sunflower seed	2 378
Cotton	80
Other	3 178
Total	34 457
Horticulture	
Viticulture	3 297
Citrus fruit	4 628
Subtropical fruit	2 030
Deciduous and other fruit	8 040
Vegetables	7 843
Potatoes	4 058
Other	1 890
Total	31 786
Animal products	
Wool	1 234
Poultry and poultry products	23 165
Cattle and cattle products	12 808
Sheep and goats slaughtered	3 107
Pigs slaughtered	3 126
Milk	9 138
Other	10 291
Total	62 869
Grand total	129 112
Source: Directorate: Agricultural Statistics, Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries	

The prices of milk and most dairy products decreased in 2009 due to the surplus production of raw milk in 2008 and a slump in international dairy prices.

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2010/11

AGRICULTURE, FORESTRY AND FISHERIES

In June 2010, President Jacob Zuma launched the Masibuyele Emasimini mechanisation scheme, a food-production intensification programme, at Marapyane Village in Mpumalanga.



This project affords black farmers a realistic chance to improve production, increase yields and gain access to domestic and global markets. The project also ensures the utilisation of fallow land and seeks to resuscitate collapsed land-reform projects.

By March 2010, a further increase in the productive land as a result of Masibuyele Emasimini indicated a coverage of 36 223 ha of land. In all, 42 430 households are benefiting from this intervention.

Field crops and horticulture

The gross income from field crops decreased by 21,2%, from R40 306 million in 2008 to R31 768 million in 2009. This was mainly a result of a decrease of income from maize, wheat and sunflower seed by 25,2%; 45,1%; and 38,6%; respectively.

- Maize is the largest locally produced field crop, and the most important source of carbohydrates in the Southern African Development Community (SADC) for animal and human consumption. South Africa is the main maize producer in the SADC region, with an average production of about 9,7 Mt a year over the past 10 years. It is estimated that more than 8 000 commercial maize producers are responsible for the major part of the South African crop, while the rest is produced by thousands of small-scale producers. Maize is produced mainly in North West, the Free State and Mpumalanga. A total of 12,6 Mt of maize was produced in the 2008/09 on 2,9 million ha of land (non-commercial agriculture included).
- Wheat is produced in the Western Cape and the Free State. In 2009, 1,96 Mt were produced on 642 500 ha of land.
- South Africa is the world's 12th-largest producer of sunflower seed. An area of 636 800 ha was planted in 2008/09, producing 801 000 t.
- There are about 35 300 sugar-cane growers in South Africa, the majority of whom are small, medium and micro-enterprises (SMMEs) and who collectively farm 391 483 ha of sugar cane. Sugar-cane farms vary in size and subsistence farms average 1,7 ha, while family owned farms average 186 ha.
- South Africa is the leading exporter of protea cut flowers, which account for more than half of proteas sold on the world market.

Production of important field crops and horticultural products, 2009 ('000 t)

Maize	12 567
Wheat	1 928
Sugar cane	20 411
Grain sorghum	318
Groundnuts	113
Sunflower seed	833
Deciduous and other soft fruit	1 829
Citrus fruit	2 218
Subtropical fruit	655
Vegetables	2 442
Potatoes	1 819

Source: Directorate: Agricultural Statistics, Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries

Some other crops

- Deciduous fruit is grown mainly in the Western Cape and in the Langkloof Valley in the Eastern Cape. Smaller production areas are found along the Orange River and in the Free State, Mpumalanga and Gauteng.
- The gross income from field crops decreased by 21,2%, from R40 306 million in 2008 to R31 768 million in 2009, because of a decrease of income from maize, wheat and sunflower seed by 25,2%; 45,1%; and 38,6%; respectively. These decreases were the result of both a drop in production and lower prices received by farmers.
- Citrus production is largely limited to irrigation areas and takes place in Limpopo (16 255 ha), Mpumalanga (11 681 ha), the Eastern Cape (12 923 ha), KwaZulu-Natal (4 004 ha), the Western Cape (9 524 ha) and Northern Cape (639 ha). In 2009, income from citrus showed a decrease of 20,7% and amounted to R4 628 million. In 2009, South Africa produced 655 156 t of subtropical fruit, which were 73 950 t or 10,1% more than in 2008.
- The third crop estimate made by producer cellars and viticulturists in the various regions during February 2010, showed a decrease of more than 62 000 t compared to the January 2010 estimate. The 2010 crop was estimated to amount to 1 243 449 t – a decrease of 6,5% and in effect 86 908 t less than the 2009 crop and 182 164 t less than the 2008 record crop.

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2010/11

AGRICULTURE, FORESTRY AND FISHERIES

South African organic farmers produce a large variety of produce. These include various cereals, vegetables, roots and tubers, herbs and spices, fruits, nuts and Rooibos tea. The largest fruit crops in terms of hectares are bananas, avocados and mangoes, while the largest vegetable crops are cucurbits, tomatoes, asparagus, brassicas and potatoes. Organic wine and olive oil are also produced and organic dairy farming has started in some provinces.



- Pineapples are grown in the Eastern Cape and northern KwaZulu-Natal. Other subtropical crops such as avocados, mangoes, bananas, litchis, guavas, papayas, granadillas, and macadamia and pecan nuts are mainly produced in Mpumalanga and Limpopo and in the subtropical coastal areas of KwaZulu-Natal and the Eastern Cape.

Livestock

Nearly 80% of agricultural land in South Africa is mainly suitable for extensive livestock farming. Livestock are also kept in other areas, usually in combination with other farming enterprises. Numbers vary according to weather conditions. Stockbreeders concentrate mainly on developing breeds that are well adapted to diverse weather and environmental conditions. The livestock sector contributes up to 49% of agricultural output. The livestock sector contributes up to 49% of agricultural output. South Africa generally produces 85% of its meat requirements, while the remaining 15% is imported from Namibia, Botswana, Swaziland, Australia, New Zealand and Europe. The livestock industry is the largest national agricultural sector.

Commercial dairy farmers are estimated at 3 550 and they own approximately 980 000 dairy cows and employ about 38 000 workers. An additional 40 000 workers are employed in other segments of the value chain such as milk processing and the milling industry.

Comprehensive Agriculture Support Programme (CASP)

A budget of R862,4 million for 2010/11, was allocated to CASP to address support for food production for subsistence and for the market. The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries is expected to embark on projects in food production, agroprocessing, infrastructure development

By mid-2010, the implementation of the Micro-Agricultural Financial Institutional Scheme of South Africa (Mafisa) was on course with eight accredited institutions operating as intermediaries retailing Mafisa loans. In the 2009/10 financial year, R56 million was disbursed as production loans for, among other things, livestock, grains, vegetables, poultry and sugar-cane production activities.

Funded projects include cotton and groundnut farmers in the Taung irrigation scheme in North West; vegetable projects in Nwanedi, Limpopo; sugar-cane farmers in KwaZulu-Natal; and livestock projects in the Northern Cape. Various job opportunities were created and to fast-track service delivery, a Mafisa call centre was established to assist with information dissemination.



(water, dams, irrigation systems and fencing), cooperatives and stokvels (social economy) as well as the green economy (agro-ecology). CASP outputs for the 2010/11 financial year included the establishment of 1 739 food-security projects; creation of 760 jobs; and training and improvement of knowledge and skills of 5 089 beneficiaries to ensure that 7 961 on- and off-farm infrastructure targets were completed and were functioning.

Climate change

The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries is a major role player in climate-change activities within the agricultural sector. The department has several climate change-related policies and programmes. These are in addition to the Disaster Management Act, 2002 and the National Disaster Risk-Management Framework, 2005, which address agricultural risk-management and climate change. The department's climate-change programmes and policies are aligned with South Africa's National Climate-Change Response Policy. The Climate Change Sector Plan for Agriculture (Working Paper, April 2008) outlines measures of addressing agricultural sector challenges, namely creating awareness of climate change and the effects of climate change; improving knowledge on climate change; increasing capacity to respond to climate-change impacts; research; and funding research projects.

Forestry

In terms of land use, the area under forestry is about 1,257 million ha or about 1% of the total South African land

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2010/11

AGRICULTURE, FORESTRY AND FISHERIES

area of 122,3 million ha. The forestry sector (forestry and forest products) contributes about 1% to GDP. In terms of regional GDP, forestry in KwaZulu-Natal contributes 4,7%; in Mpumalanga 5,5%; and about 0,8% in Limpopo.

The export of forest products increased from R9,5 billion in 2001 to R12,5 billion in 2009. The forestry sector employed around 170 000 people in 2009. The forestry subsector provided about 77 000 direct jobs and 30 000 indirect jobs. The pulp and paper subsector provided approximately 13 000 direct and 11 000 indirect employment opportunities. Some 20 000 workers were employed in sawmilling, 6 000 in the timber board and 2 200 in the mining timber subsectors, while another 11 000 workers were employed in miscellaneous jobs in the forestry sector. In 2008, the total investment in the forestry industry amounted to R18,8 billion. This investment comprised 56,2% in trees; 24,6% in land; 11,6% in roads; 6,2% in fixed assets; and 1,4% in moveable assets. Regarding the investment in the forest products sector by type of processing plant for 2008, the total book value of investments amounted to R15,8 billion. This investment comprised 84,7% in pulp and board plants; 10,2% in sawmills and veneer plants; 0,7% in pole plants; 0,3% in mining timber; and 4,1% other plants.

Indigenous forests

There are about 530 000 ha of indigenous or natural forests in the country, which occur mainly along the southern and eastern escarpment, the coastal belt and in sheltered kloofs or ravines.

There has been an increase in the use of natural forests as sources of medicine, building material, fuel wood and food.

South Africa has 183 primary wood-processing plants, 180 of which are owned by the private sector and three of which are owned by local and state authorities. Of these, 102 are sawmills; 13 are mining-timber sawmills; 44 are pole-treating plants; 19 are pulp, paper and board mills; one is a match factory; and four are charcoal plants.

The total roundwood intake into these processing plants in 2008 was 19,6 million m³, valued at R6 billion. The value of sales of timber products produced by these primary processing plants totalled R21,4 billion. Some R15,8 billion was invested in primary roundwood-processing plants (at book value). At market value, this increased to an estimated R40 billion.



Champion trees, protected under the National Forests Act, 1998 are proclaimed every year in the *Government Gazette*. These are individual trees and groups of trees (shortlisted by a panel of experts) considered to be of national conservation importance.

Among the listed trees are:

- the Tsitsikamma Big Tree along the Garden Route
 - the Post Office Milkwood Tree of Mossel Bay
 - the Sagole Baobab in Limpopo (one of the largest trees in South Africa)
 - camphor trees planted at Vergelegen Estate three centuries ago.
- Guidelines have been developed for the use of these trees to ensure the continued benefits they offer the people of the country, both economically and ecologically

A massive gum tree, measuring more than 38 m from side to side, became the latest edition to South Africa's list of Champion Trees in 2010. The tree's massive crown shades part of the Gavin Relly Green on the Witwatersrand University campus grounds and is supported by a 7,5-m wide trunk. Gum trees in South Africa reach exceptional sizes, exceeding the sizes of other gum trees planted in all other countries except in their native Australia.

It is estimated that around 80% of South Africa's population still uses medicinal plants, most of which are sourced from natural habitats.

By mid-2008, the private sector owned 1 041 501 ha (or 83%) of the total plantation area of 1 257 341 ha, and virtually all the processing plants in the country. The remaining 17% (215 840 ha) was under public ownership, although this figure includes Komatiland Forests, the remaining South African Forestry Company Limited package. The extent of public ownership has decreased significantly because of restructuring.

In 2008, capital investment in these plantations stood at R18,8 billion, 56% of which was attributable to investment in trees. A further 24% was tied up in land, 12% in roads, 6% in fixed assets and 2% in machinery and equipment.

Fisheries

The South African coastline covers more than 3 200 km, linking the east and west coasts of Africa. South Africa's shores are particularly rich in biodiversity, with some 10 000 species of marine plants and animals having been recorded.

The productive waters of the west coast support a variety of commercially exploited marine life, including hake, anchovy,



Pocket Guide to South Africa 2010/11

AGRICULTURE, FORESTRY AND FISHERIES

South Africa's national tree, the yellowwood tree (*Podocarpus*), can grow to a height of more than 40 m with a girth of 8 m, and can live for up to 800 years.



sardine, horse mackerel, tuna, snoek, rock lobster and abalone.

On the east coast, squid, linefish and a wide range of intertidal resources provide an important source of food and livelihood for coastal communities. Marine life that is not harvested, such as whales, dolphins and seabirds, is increasingly recognised as a valuable resource for nature-based tourism.

The South African fishing industry, which was once concentrated in the hands of a few, largely white-owned companies, has undergone intensive transformation over the past few years.

South Africa has a well-established fishery sector and is a net exporter of fishery products. However, most of South African fisheries are considered to be fully utilised and high-value fisheries such as abalone, prawns and linefish are largely overexploited.

The country also has a well-developed fisheries management system and is one of the leading countries in the implementation of an ecosystem approach for fisheries management. South Africa plays an important role internationally, in the regional fisheries management organisations and regional programmes such as the Benguela Current Commission and other related programmes.

The programme aims to promote the equitable and sustainable management and efficient use of marine living resources.

The South African coast provides substantial opportunities for economic and social development. However, it is a resource at risk from inappropriate developments, pollution, poaching and over use. The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries plans to look at the economic prospects for marine culture, namely the husbanding and harvesting of sea plants for economic purposes.

The department plans to reduce the degradation of the marine environment through policies that promote conservation and sustainable use of marine living resources. It also aims to restore and maintain productive capacity and biodiversity of the marine environment and protect human health.

The projected increase in demand for high-end fishery products provides an opportunity for substantial increases in aquaculture production.



South Africa's commercial fishery industry is valued at about R2 billion annually and employs about 27 000 people.

The total annual fish production from marine fisheries is more than 600 000 t. Given the market trends, South Africa's environmental potential for aquaculture and the state of development of its industry, production could grow from the level of 3 543 t (worth R218 million) to more than 90 000 t (worth R2,4 billion) over the next 10 to 20 years.

The fishing industry has an annual turnover of about R80 billion and contributes 0,5% to the GDP.

In 2010, a policy review process was developed and implemented for fishing rights allocations in the commercial sector. A strategy was also put in place for abalone and hake fishing.





RURAL DEVELOPMENT



RURAL DEVELOPMENT AND LAND REFORM

The implementation of rural development is expected to result in vibrant, equitable and sustainable rural communities and food security for all. The essence of such a community would be measured through the following:

- food security
- rapid and sustained economic growth
- intellectual development
- environmental sustainability
- healthy rural communities
- political maturity
- social stability and growth
- self-reliant and confident communities
- fairness in line with the Bill of Rights
- social cohesion.

The Department of Rural Development and Land Reform's strategy to achieve sustainable rural development is "agrarian transformation". It will focus on establishing rural business initiatives, cooperatives, cultural initiatives, agro-industries and rural settings; empowering rural people and communities (especially women and the youth); and upgrading economic, social, information and communications infrastructure and public amenities and facilities in villages and small rural towns.

Comprehensive Rural Development Programme (CRDP)

During 2009, the South African Government conceptualised CRDP.

The key thrust of the CRDP framework is an integrated programme of rural development, land reform and agrarian change, whose strategic focus is social cohesion and development.

The CRDP is premised on three phases: Phase One, which focuses on meeting basic human needs; Phase Two, which has large-scale infrastructure development as driver; and, Phase Three, with the emergence of rural industrial and credit financial sectors, which is driven by small, medium and micro-enterprises and village markets.

The department has implemented the CRDP in 21 sites throughout South Africa and aims to roll this out to 160 sites by 2014. Lessons learnt from these CRDP sites indicate that the challenges in rural areas include underutilisation and/or unsustainable use of natural resources; poor or lack of access to socio-economic and cultural infrastructure and services,

Riemvasmaak was chosen as a pilot site for the Comprehensive Rural Development Programme in the Northern Cape during 2009 when the last portion of the community's land claim was finalised and by April 2010, the following had been achieved:

- the Provincial Government constructed a handling facility and livestock water point at Sending (Mission)
- fruit trees and seedlings were distributed at Vredesvallei
- construction of the healthcare facility had commenced
- the Northern Cape Department of Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development obtained an office in Kakamas
- the department embarked on veterinary campaigns to ensure livestock health in the area
- the department was testing all bore holes on new farms as well as constructing handling facilities for new farms
- border fences were upgraded
- the department also developed an infrastructure plan for the 46 000 ha that were handed over in 2009.

public amenities and facilities and government services; lack of access to clean water or lack of water resources for both household and agricultural development; low literacy, skills levels and migratory labour practices; decay of the social fabric; and unexploited opportunities in agriculture, tourism, mining and manufacturing.

In each area where the CRDP is being implemented, a new vibrancy has been created around working together, involving communities, the three spheres of government and the private sector. This has enabled communities to mobilise resources from all sectors of government to enhance delivery.

An inclusive CRDP stakeholder participation model has been developed in the form of the Council of Stakeholders, functioning as a partner in planning, implementation and monitoring. Through this inclusive body, communities themselves have become central to their own development.

Through the work undertaken at the CRDP sites, and in conjunction with fellow departments at national, provincial and local government level, the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform erected infrastructure such as housing, water, sanitation, pack-sheds, community halls, multipurpose centres, fencing, early childhood development centres, satellite police stations and renovated schools and clinics.



RURAL DEVELOPMENT AND LAND REFORM

The Department of Rural Development and Land Reform introduced the Land Tenure Security Bill in 2010, which repeals the Extension of Security of Tenure Act, 1997 as well as the Labour Tenants Act, 1996 and is informed by the following objectives:

- protecting relative rights for farm workers
- strengthening the rights of farm dwellers
- enhancing food security through a sustained production discipline.

The department initiated a new youth skills development and employment programme, the National Rural Youth Service Corps. The main goal is to develop a cadre of young community paraprofessionals and artisans who will take responsibility for the development of their own communities.

Four young people, of whom one must be a person with a disability, are expected to be enlisted into the programme from each of the 2 872 rural wards. At least 50% of these must be women.

The contractual period, including the training period is 24 months. This process will lead to the employment and skilling of almost 12 000 youths, of whom almost 3 000 should be youth with disabilities.

Land reform

The introduction of the CRDP, of which land reform is an integral part, has necessitated that the approach be overhauled and new strategies adopted. While achieving equitable distribution of land remains a fundamental policy of government, there is an even more urgent need to ensure that land reform is measured not only through equity but also through productivity, leading to enhanced food security for all, job creation and skills training among beneficiaries.

Categorisation of land needs

From April 2010, the department is implementing stringent criteria to meet the different land needs of beneficiaries. The land needs of qualifying beneficiaries are divided into three categories.

The first category comprises a large majority of landless poor who need some land for shelter and some for household food production. This group includes about 2,8 million people who live on commercial farm land without any security of

tenure; landless poor who live in and around rural small towns without meaningful incomes; and people from overcrowded former homelands.

These land needs will be met through the Land Redistribution Programme by providing small units of land to accommodate their specific needs. A support package to meet these specific needs was being developed and was expected to be implemented during 2010/11.

The second category comprises small-scale farmers with proven ability and commitment to farm but who do not have the means to expand as they do not have enough land, access to finance and the required technical support. This category is largely found in communal areas and on commercial farms. It is in this area where the department aims to intensify production discipline, skills development, mentorship and job creation as conditions for government support.

The third category consists of relatively established black farmers who are already entrepreneurs. They largely achieved their success despite limited or lack of government support.

The department will measure the successful implementation of land reform through the number of jobs created, increased incomes and a critical mass of successful farmers who will contribute to the gross domestic product and balance of payments.

Land redistribution

The Redistribution Programme is largely implemented through the Provision of Land and Assistance Act, 1993.

By 2010, 5,9 million ha of land had been acquired through redistribution and restitution.

The tenure issues of millions of South Africans living and working on farms, and in communal areas and small rural towns remain a challenge for government.

By April 2010, the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform completed the development of the *Green Paper on Agrarian Transformation, Rural Development and Land Reform*, which is intended to culminate in a new land policy framework and legislation, which should consolidate all land-related laws.



RURAL DEVELOPMENT AND LAND REFORM

Recapitalisation and development

The Department of Rural Development and Land Reform prioritises the recapitalisation and development of all distressed land-reform projects implemented since 1994.

The department will establish strategic partnerships to provide technical support to all struggling land-reform projects by working with the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries; the Department of Water Affairs; the Land Bank; and social partners in the private sector.

The department will conduct farm assessments and develop credible development plans as conditions for support, through social contracts with all beneficiaries.

Among the conditions that will be attached to assistance, production discipline will be paramount. Twenty-five percent of the department's baseline allocation will be set aside for this purpose. This funding will complement other funding provided by the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries and provincial equitable share of relevant provincial government departments.

Recapitalisation and development will be further extended to black farmers in distress who are struggling to meet their loan obligations with the Land Bank and other financial institutions.

The recapitalisation and development initiative of the department underscores the seriousness of government in ensuring that there is food security for all.

Land administration

The department aims to provide value-added public land information and support services to clients and to ensure the efficient administration of state land.

Land-rights management

The department aims to provide tenure security that creates socio-economic opportunities for people on farms and in communal areas to ensure vibrant and sustainable communities characterised by social cohesion and development.

Geo-spatial services, technology development and disaster management

The department is responsible for the national control survey network, the national mapping and aerial imagery programmes and the provision of geo-spatial information services.

Cadastral survey management

The Cadastral Survey Management Branch aims to provide efficient cadastral survey-management services and cadastral information services in support of land delivery and development.

Deeds registration

The 10 deeds registries are located in Pretoria, Cape Town, Johannesburg, Pietermaritzburg, Bloemfontein, Kimberley, King William's Town, Vryburg, Mthatha and Nelspruit. These offices register deeds and documents relating to real rights in more than eight million registered land parcels consisting of township erven, farms, agricultural holdings, sectional title units and sectional title exclusive-use areas in terms of the Deeds Registries Act, 1937 and the Sectional Titles Act, 1986.

Commission on the Restitution of Land Rights (RLR)

The CRLR is a statutory body set up in terms of the Restitution of Land Rights Act, 1994, as amended. The role of the commission is to provide redress to victims of dispossession of rights in land, as a result of racially discriminatory laws and practices that took place after 19 June 1913.

The overall approach in settling the 3 909 outstanding claims will be in line with the principles of the CRDP, focusing among other things on the profiling of households and the employment creation model as well as building capacity for conflict resolution.

The department aims to complete research on all the outstanding land claims by December 2011.





MINERAL RESOURCES



MINERAL RESOURCES

The Department of Mineral Resources aims to formulate and implement policy to ensure optimum use of the country's mineral resources.

South Africa's mineral wealth is typically found in the following well-known geological formations and settings:

- the Witwatersrand Basin yields some 94% of South Africa's gold output and contains considerable resources of uranium, silver, pyrite and osmiridium
- the Bushveld Complex is known for its platinum-group metals (PGMs) (with associated copper, nickel and cobalt mineralisation), chromium and vanadium-bearing titanium iron-ore formations as well as large deposits of industrial minerals, including fluorspar and andalusite
- the Transvaal Supergroup contains enormous resources of manganese and iron ore
- the Karoo Basin extends through Mpumalanga, KwaZulu-Natal, Free State as well as Limpopo, hosting considerable bituminous coal and anthracite resources
- the Phalaborwa Igneous Complex hosts extensive deposits of copper, phosphate, titanium, vermiculite, feldspar and zirconium ores
- kimberlite pipes host diamonds that also occur in alluvial, fluvial and marine settings
- heavy mineral sands contain ilmenite, rutile and zircon
- significant deposits of lead-zinc ores associated with copper and silver are found in the Northern Cape near Aggeneys.

Policy

The Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act (MPRDA), 2002 aims to:

- recognise that mineral resources are the common heritage of all South Africans
- promote the beneficiation of minerals
- guarantee security of tenure for existing prospecting and mining operations
- ensure that historically disadvantaged individuals participate more meaningfully
- promote junior and small-scale mining.

In terms of the Act, new order rights may be registered, transferred and traded, while existing operators are guaranteed security of tenure. Mining rights are valid for a maximum of 30 years and renewable for another 30 years, while prospecting rights are valid for up to five years and renewable for another three.

In 2009/10, the Department of Mineral Resources concluded an assessment of the progress of the industry's transformation against the Mining Charter objectives as adopted in 2002.

The racial ownership pattern of the country's mining assets had remained largely unchanged, with only 8,9% black ownership attained by 2009 against the target of 15%. The reviewed Mining Charter, launched in September 2010, seeks to correct this, putting emphasis on 26% of South Africa's mining assets being Black Economic Empowerment-compliant by 2014.

It also provides for the complete elimination of hostels on South Africa's mines by 2014, and introduces a sustainable element, premised on the understanding that the social licence to operate includes the environment, health and safety performance.

Under the new charter, companies found not complying could face penalties, which could include the revoking of a mining company's licence.

Small-scale mining

The Department of Mineral Resources deems the role of small-scale mining in community upliftment, job creation and poverty alleviation as critical.

The small-scale mining sector is faced with many challenges such as lack of access to finance and markets, shortage of skills and inadequate or non-compliance with regulatory requirements, all of which the Department of Mineral Resources is working towards addressing.

The small-scale mining sector has historically mainly comprised alluvial diamond and in-land salt mining, but lately the bulk of the demand for small-scale mining ventures is associated with industrial commodities, such as slate, sand, clay, sandstone, dolerite and granites for the production of infrastructural development products such as tiles, clay and cement bricks, aggregates and dimension stone for cladding.

At the end of February 2011, President Jacob Zuma launched the African Mining Exploration and Finance Company, a subsidiary of the Central Energy Fund. He said the role of the State could not merely be confined to that of a regulator, but the State must actively participate in the mining industry to ensure that national interests were protected and advanced.



MINERAL RESOURCES

It is essential that small-scale miners in South Africa become integrated into the greater South African mining community and the mainstream economy. Government has taken active measures to promote the development of this sector.

The department assists aspiring small-scale miners in:

- establishing legal entities
- guiding towards the identification of mineral deposits
- doing environmental impact assessments, and feasibility and market studies
- legal and contractual arrangements and mineral rights
- developing mining equipment.

The Small-Scale Mining Board has been set up as a point of delivery for the services required by the small-scale mining sector. It coordinates a substantial amount of expert capacity and experience and specialises in planning and developing a viable mining project through pre-feasibility stages.

Reserves

South Africa's reserves of the following commodities are the highest in the world: manganese, chromium, PGMs, gold, vanadium and aluminosilicates.

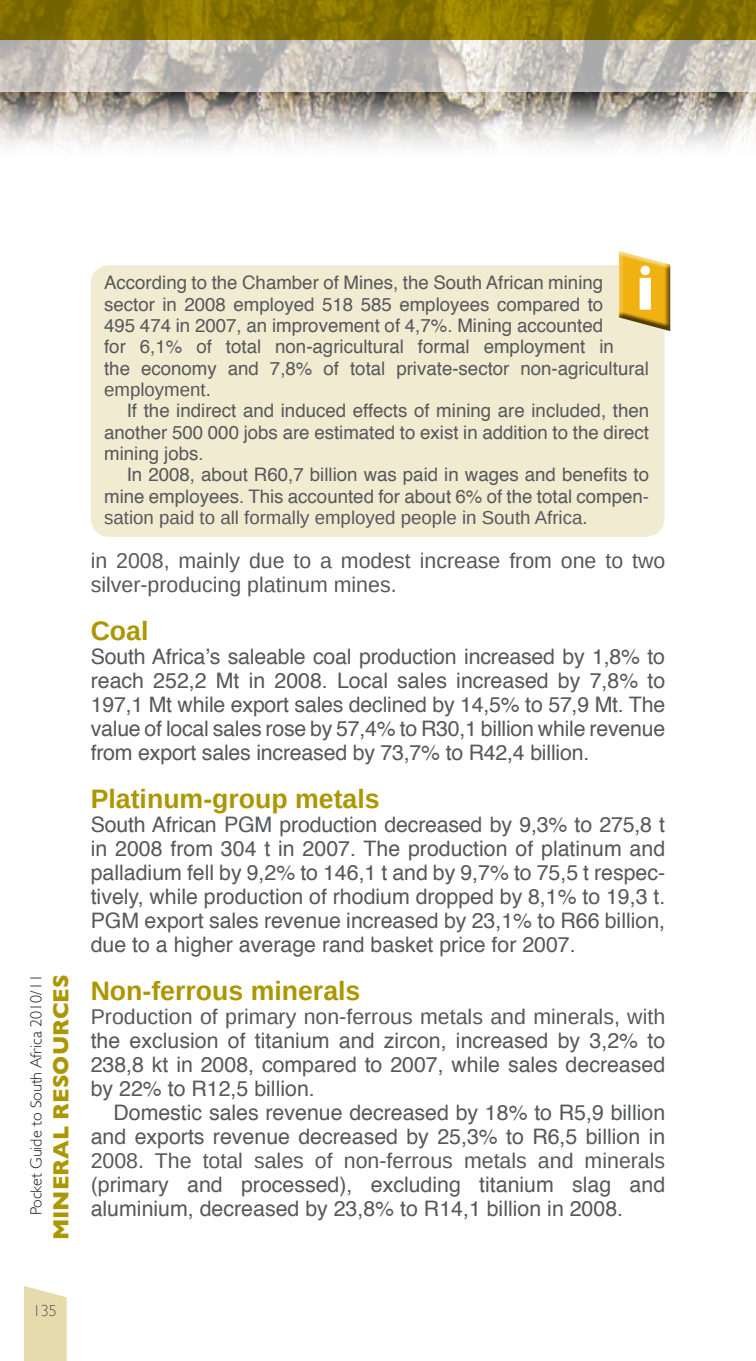
Gold

South Africa's gold production decreased by 15,8% from 252,6 t in 2007 to 212,7 t in 2008, resulting in the country dropping in production ranking from second-largest producer to fourth-largest, mainly as a result of the mining of lower-grade ore, influenced by higher rand gold prices, temporary closure of shafts to maintain infrastructure, as well as new safety procedures, which involved the temporary closure of a shaft where a fatal incident had occurred to facilitate a safety audit.

About 4,1% of South Africa's gold production was beneficiated to coins and jewellery locally during 2008, generating revenue of R2 billion.

Silver

South Africa does not have a primary silver mine and the metal is only produced as a by-product of other minerals. Silver was produced as a by-product from 13 gold operations, one uranium mine, two copper mines and two platinum mines in 2008. Despite the vagaries of the global economy, production increased by 8,1% to 2,7 million ounces of silver



According to the Chamber of Mines, the South African mining sector in 2008 employed 518 585 employees compared to 495 474 in 2007, an improvement of 4,7%. Mining accounted for 6,1% of total non-agricultural formal employment in the economy and 7,8% of total private-sector non-agricultural employment.



If the indirect and induced effects of mining are included, then another 500 000 jobs are estimated to exist in addition to the direct mining jobs.

In 2008, about R60,7 billion was paid in wages and benefits to mine employees. This accounted for about 6% of the total compensation paid to all formally employed people in South Africa.

in 2008, mainly due to a modest increase from one to two silver-producing platinum mines.

Coal

South Africa's saleable coal production increased by 1,8% to reach 252,2 Mt in 2008. Local sales increased by 7,8% to 197,1 Mt while export sales declined by 14,5% to 57,9 Mt. The value of local sales rose by 57,4% to R30,1 billion while revenue from export sales increased by 73,7% to R42,4 billion.

Platinum-group metals

South African PGM production decreased by 9,3% to 275,8 t in 2008 from 304 t in 2007. The production of platinum and palladium fell by 9,2% to 146,1 t and by 9,7% to 75,5 t respectively, while production of rhodium dropped by 8,1% to 19,3 t. PGM export sales revenue increased by 23,1% to R66 billion, due to a higher average rand basket price for 2007.

Non-ferrous minerals

Production of primary non-ferrous metals and minerals, with the exclusion of titanium and zircon, increased by 3,2% to 238,8 kt in 2008, compared to 2007, while sales decreased by 22% to R12,5 billion.

Domestic sales revenue decreased by 18% to R5,9 billion and exports revenue decreased by 25,3% to R6,5 billion in 2008. The total sales of non-ferrous metals and minerals (primary and processed), excluding titanium slag and aluminium, decreased by 23,8% to R14,1 billion in 2008.

MINERAL RESOURCES

Ferrous minerals

Sales of primary ferrous minerals contributed R44,9 billion (11,6%) to total South African mineral sales, including primary plus processed. Sales of processed and primary ferrous minerals contributed R82,2 billion (28,5%) to total mineral exports in 2008 and the combined sales revenue of primary and processed ferrous minerals in 2008 amounted to R97,1 billion (\$11,7 billion), representing 25,1% of the total value of all primary and processed minerals sold. The significantly higher contributions of both export and total ferrous mineral sales revenue in 2008 compared with 2007 is testimony to the growing importance of ferrous metals in South Africa's mineral industry.

Industrial minerals

There are about 674 producers of industrial minerals in South Africa, of which almost half are in the sand and aggregate sector. There are some 149 producers of clays (brick-making and special), 40 limestone and dolomite, 61 dimension stone, 27 salt and 16 silica producers. Sales of primary industrial minerals in South Africa grew steadily at an annualised compound growth rate of 18% from 2004 to 2008.

Processed minerals

Total sales revenue of processed minerals increased by 57,1% from R54,8 billion in 2007 to R86,1 billion in 2008 and export sales accounted for 80% of total sales. The value of local sales of processed mineral products increased by 32,8% from R13,1 billion in 2007 to R17,4 billion in 2008.

The largest contributors to total sales were classified commodities at 44% as well as chromium alloys at 36,9%. Total production of processed minerals decreased by 7,9% to 8,1 Mt in 2008.

Mine health and safety

The levels of death, ill health and injuries at mines remain a serious concern for the Department of Mineral Resources. During 2009, the mining industry managed to record a 3% improvement in fatalities due to mine accidents when compared with the previous year, when 171 miners lost their lives followed by 165 miners in 2009.

In July 2010, the Minister of Mineral Resources, Ms Susan Shabangu, launched the Matla Diamond-Polishing Plant in the Eastern Cape. The plant will enable South Africa to process more of its own diamonds.



The R102-million project is a partnership between Matla Beneficiation Company, the East London Industrial Development Zone, the Industrial Development Corporation and Gold Eastern Holdings of China.

The automated plant is equipped with technology worth R35 million from China, and is expected to be eight times more efficient than a similar-sized manual operation.

It will produce a maximum of 20 000 carats a month, translating into R100 million in monthly revenue.

The department has introduced the Mine Health and Safety Amendment Act, 2008, which aims to enhance the State's ability to address the mine-health and safety challenge of high injuries, ill health and deaths.

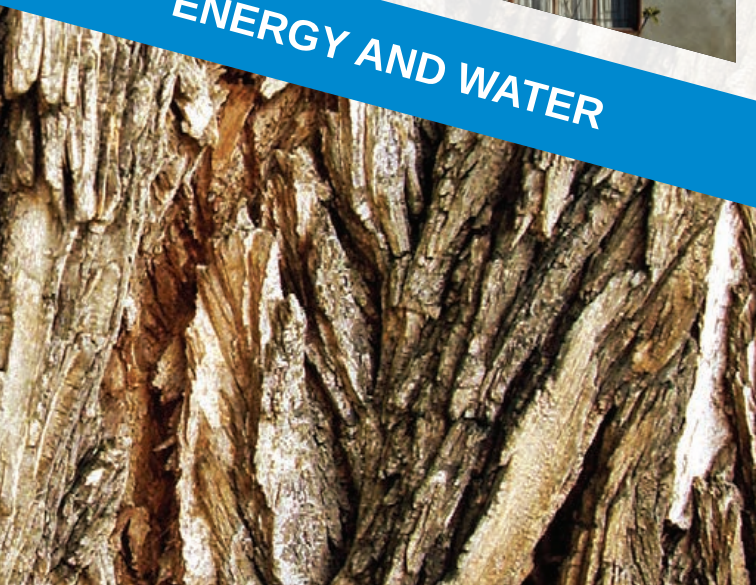
The Amendment Act introduces more strict sanctions for non-compliance with health and safety standards by individuals and corporate bodies as well as prosecution.

The Act establishes the Mine Health and Safety Inspectorate as a juristic person. This amendment is significant as it provides a platform upon which the critical question of capacity to effectively enforce health and safety regulatory requirements can be addressed.





ENERGY AND WATER



ENERGY AND WATER

The Department of Energy's Energy Policy is based on the following key objectives:

- ensure energy security
- achieve universal access and transform the energy sector
- regulate the energy sector
- effective and efficient service delivery
- optimal utilisation of energy resources
- ensure sustainable development
- promote corporate governance.

Integrated Resource Plan (IRP)

In October 2010, the Inter-Ministerial Committee on Energy approved the draft IRP, a 20-year blueprint that indicates that the country is planning to commit to 14% nuclear power as part of its future energy mix.

According to the draft plan, South Africa's electrical energy will, by 2030, comprise 48% baseload coal, 14% baseload nuclear, 16% renewable energy, 9% peaking open cycle gas turbine, 6% peaking pump storage, 5% mid-merit gas and 2% baseload import hydro.

The objective of the IRP is to develop a sustainable electricity investment strategy for generation capacity and transmission infrastructure for South Africa over the next 25 years. The investment strategy includes implications arising from demand-side management and pricing, and capacity provided by all generators (Eskom and independent power producers).

The IRP is intended to:

- improve the long-term reliability of electricity supply through meeting adequacy criteria over and above keeping pace with economic growth and development
- ascertain South Africa's capacity investment needs for the medium-term business planning environment
- consider environmental and other externality impacts and the effect of renewable energy technologies
- provide the framework for ministerial determination of new generation capacity (inclusive of the required feasibility studies) as envisaged in the new generation capacity regulations.

Energy in South Africa

Energy creates jobs for about 250 000 people. Eskom generates around 95% of the electricity used in South Africa and exports to countries in Africa.



In April 2010, President Jacob Zuma launched the national Solar Water-Heating Programme at Winterveldt, outside Pretoria.

The launch was in line with government's target of installing at least one million solar water heaters by 2014 to reduce the water heating load on the national grid.

Some of the objectives of the programme are to offset rising electricity costs for residential households through savings on water heating and to contribute to the reduction of South Africa's carbon footprint.

This energy intensity is above average, with only 10 other countries having higher commercial primary energy intensities. It is largely a result of the economy's structure with dominating large-scale, energy-intensive primary mineral beneficiation and mining industries.

Coal, as the major indigenous energy resource, is relied on for the generation of most of the country's electricity and a significant proportion of its liquid fuels. Diversification of the primary energy mix, which comprises about 88% coal, is especially challenging.

Power sources

Coal

About 77% of the country's primary energy needs are provided by coal. South Africa produces an average of 224 million tons (Mt) of marketable coal annually, making it the fifth-largest coal-producing country in the world.

About 25% of the production is exported internationally, making South Africa the third-largest coal-exporting country. The remainder of South Africa's coal production feeds the various local industries, with 53% used for electricity generation.

The key role played by coal reserves in the economy is illustrated by the fact that Eskom is the seventh-largest electricity generator in the world, and Sasol the largest coal-to-chemicals producer.

The coal-mining industry is highly concentrated, with Anglo Coal, BHP Billiton, Sasol Mining, Exxaro Coal, Kumba Coal and Xstrata Coal accounting for 90% of the saleable coal production. The eight largest mines account for 61% of the output.

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2010/11

ENERGY AND WATER

Eskom, together with Sasol, PetroSA, Anglo American and the South African National Energy Research Institute, is sponsoring the development of the South African Carbon Dioxide (CO₂) Storage Atlas. The atlas will represent an early assessment, aimed at identifying areas and estimating the potential capacity for geological storage of CO₂ in South Africa.



Nuclear

Cabinet approved the Nuclear Energy Policy for South Africa in June 2008. The policy aims to increase the role of nuclear energy as part of the process of diversifying South Africa's primary energy sources to ensure energy security. The policy will ensure reducing the over-reliance on coal.

Eskom is investing up to 20 000 MW on new nuclear capacity by 2025.

Eskom's Koeberg Nuclear Power Station's two reactors outside Cape Town supply 1 800 MW to the national grid when both operate at full power, thus providing about 6,5% of South Africa's electricity.

The National Nuclear Regulator is the prime safety regulator and is responsible for protecting persons, property and the environment against nuclear damage by establishing safety standards and regulatory practices. It exercises safety-related regulatory control over the siting, design, construction and operation of nuclear installations and other actions.

The Nuclear Energy Corporation of South Africa (Necsa) undertakes and promotes research and development in the field of nuclear energy, radiation sciences and technology, medical isotope manufacturing, nuclear liabilities' management, waste management and decommissioning. It is a public entity reporting to the Minister of Minerals and Energy.

Necsa's reactor-produced radioisotopes are exported to more than 50 countries.

The research reactor at Pelindaba, Safari-1, is the most commercialised reactor of its kind in the world with International Organisation for Standardisation 9001-accreditation. It earns South Africa foreign revenue worth millions of rands.

Liquid fuels

A key feature of the South African liquid fuels sector is the fact that most of the transport fuel is produced in the coastal areas but about 68% thereof is consumed in the inland region of Gauteng. This requires investments in the storage and

South African proposals and measures to reduce greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions:



- 2003 *White Paper on the Production of Energy by Renewables*. Targets established for 2013
- 2006 Treasury draft policy paper: *A Framework for Considering Market-Based Instruments to Support Environmental Fiscal Reform in South Africa*
- introduction of electricity levy, 2008
- Eskom's demand-side management programme to reduce electricity demand (from 2008)
- measures in the 2010/11 Budget: Supplementary depreciation allowance for investments by companies in energy-efficient equipment; increased levy on plastic shopping bags (4 cents, increased from 3 cents in 2009); proposed increase in the international air passenger departure tax (which was last raised in 2005/06)
- preferential tariffs for electricity produced with wind, solar, landfill gas, biomass, or hydro, beginning in March 2010
- planned second nuclear power station to come on line by 2020
- building regulations revised to require the installation of energy-efficiency equipment such as solar water heaters and efficiency lighting in new buildings
- an energy-efficiency measurement standard is to support the tax rebate for energy efficiency incorporated into the Income Tax Act, 1962
- new standard prescribing maximum energy consumption
- commitment by national government to support municipalities' efforts to upgrade the housing and building stock to prevent future negative impacts on climate change
- planned Department of Energy (with donor support) Industrial Energy-Efficiency Programme focusing on system optimisation
- Copenhagen commitment to reduce 2020 GHG emissions by 34% relative to no-policy change scenario
- installation of one million solar water heaters (target), beginning in March 2010
- new tax on vehicles varying by CO₂ emissions.

Source: Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD) *Economic Surveys: South Africa*

distribution facilities for the supply of petroleum products at the point of need.

A new R15-billion pipeline to transport petroleum from Durban to Johannesburg is under construction for completion in the 2011/12 financial year.

ENERGY AND WATER

Through the construction of the new multi-product pipeline, Transnet Pipelines will increase fuel-carrying capacity by 8,7 billion litres per annum in 2011, by 12,2 billion litres per annum in the second phase of the of the project and by 26,2 billion litres in the ultimate fifth phase of the project. This investment is in direct aid of South Africa's security of supply of energy going into the future.

The petrol price in South Africa is linked to certain international petrol markets in United States dollar. This means that supply and demand for petroleum products in the international markets, combined with the Rand-Dollar exchange rate, influence the domestic price.

The National Petroleum Gas and Oil Corporation of South Africa (PetroSA) is responsible for exploring and exploiting oil and natural gas, as well as producing and marketing synthetic fuels produced from offshore gas at the world's largest commercial gas-to-liquids plant in Mossel Bay, about 400 km east of Cape Town.

Oil and gas

South Africa has limited oil reserves and imports from the Middle East and Africa (Saudi Arabia, Iran, Kuwait, the United Arab Emirates, Yemen, Qatar, Iraq, Nigeria, Egypt and Angola) meet about 95% of South Africa's crude oil requirements.

Refined petroleum products such as petrol, diesel, residual fuel oil, paraffin, jet fuel, aviation gasoline, liquid petroleum gas (LPG) and refinery gas are produced by:

- refining crude oil (oil refineries)
- converting coal to liquid fuels and gas to liquid fuels (Sasol)
- turning natural gas into liquid fuels (PetroSA).

Another major role player in South Africa's liquid fuels industry is the Central Energy Fund (CEF). Its mandate is to engage in acquiring, exploring, generating, manufacturing, marketing and distributing any energy form, especially oil and gas. It also engages in research relating to the energy sector. The CEF's diversified portfolio of activities is housed in the following active subsidiaries:

- The Strategic Fuel Fund Association, which was established to procure and store crude oil and manage strategic crude oil stocks for South Africa. It trades and leases spare storage ullage and is involved in oil-pollution control.

In 2010, PetroSA concluded its feasibility study on a 400 000-barrels-a-day refinery at the Coega Industrial Development Zone in the Eastern Cape.



The proposed Mthombo oil refinery will save South Africa about R12,6 billion a year in energy costs once it is running and exporting oil across Africa.

The refinery is expected to result in employment for 27 500 people.

Construction on the refinery, which will be the biggest in Africa, is expected to start in 2012, with the refinery coming on stream by 2015.

- PetroSA, which owns and operates the gas-to-liquids plant at Mossel Bay. PetroSA is also involved in oil and gas exploration and production, and its offshore production platform supplies gas and condensates by gas pipeline to its onshore plant for conversion into a range of environmentally friendly transportation fuels and associated products for the domestic and international markets.
- The Petroleum Agency South Africa, which promotes and markets exploration in South African territory (both offshore and onshore for oil and gas), negotiates and monitors concessions and licences on behalf of government, and is the custodian of geological and geophysical data.
- iGas, which is a state-owned entity for the development of gas infrastructure in South Africa. iGas partnered Sasol and ENH of Mozambique in establishing the natural gas pipeline from Mozambique to South Africa.

Electricity

Eskom generates, transmits and distributes electricity to industrial, mining, commercial, agricultural and residential customers and redistributors. The majority of sales are in South Africa and other countries of southern Africa account for a small percentage of sales. It generates about 95% of the electricity used in South Africa and about 45% of the electricity used in Africa.

South Africa is faced with a situation in which the demand for electricity continues to grow within a supply-constrained environment.

The Mass Electrification Programme, which started in the 1990s, as well as the ongoing rapid industrialisation in the country has put enormous strain on energy sources.

ENERGY AND WATER

The electricity demand is expected to double over the next 20 years as government implements its Programme of Action to take the country's economy on a higher growth path.

Government is ready to spend more than R800 billion on infrastructure in the next few years. This infrastructure programme will demand an enormous supply of energy. Reliable energy supply is also a critical factor in attracting foreign investment. Also critical and central to the country's developmental agenda, is the electrification of households in both rural and urban areas as part of improving the quality of life of people.

The estimated number of households with access to electricity increased from 4,5 million (50,9%) in 1994 to 9,4 million (74,9%) in 2010.

Energy efficiency

Government set a target of 15% energy efficiency for the industry and 12% nationally to be achieved by 2015.

The energy industry leads by example by committing to energy efficiency.

While the focus has been on energy-intensive industries, room has been created for other industries and the commercial sector to join the Energy-Efficiency Campaign, through the introduction of, among other things:

- efficient lighting and heating, ventilation and air conditioning and employee education
- efficient production processes and cogeneration in the industrial sector.

Government remains committed to the efficient use of available resources. It is also committed to broadening the energy mix, thereby moving away from being fossil-dominated to a more balanced combination, which places a high premium on the use of more efficient technologies and renewable-energy resources.

South Africa's radioisotope market is the world-leader in supply of Molybdenum-99 – a clear indication that it is among the world's best in the nuclear industry.



As a result of a worldwide shortage of medical isotopes, NTP Radioisotopes, a subsidiary of the Nuclear Energy Corporation of South Africa, has managed to increase group sales by more than 80% year-on-year, and unaudited finances show net sales of more than R700 million for the 2009/10 financial year.

Sasol

Sasol is an integrated energy and chemical company. It beneficiates coal, oil and gas into liquid fuels, fuel components and chemicals with the help of its proprietary Fischer-Tropsch processes.

It mines coal in South Africa and produces gas in Mozambique and oil in Gabon. Its chemical manufacturing and marketing operations span the globe.

In South Africa, Sasol refines imported crude oil and retail liquid fuels through its network of retail convenience centres. Sasol also supplies fuels to other distributors in the region and gas to industrial customers in South Africa.

In May 2010, Sasol approved the construction of a R1,9-billion ethylene purification unit at its Sasol Polymers plant in Sasolburg.

The plant is expected to go on stream in the second half of 2013 and will be ramped up to full capacity by 2015, enabling the company to boost ethylene production by about 48 000 tons per year.

Energy and the environment

South Africa is among the top 20 emitters of greenhouse gases (GHGs) in the world and is the largest emitter in Africa, largely because of the economy's dependence on fossil fuels. The National Climate-Change Strategy, developed by the former Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism, requires that government departments collaborate in a coordinated manner to ensure that response measures to climate change are properly directed and carried out with a national focus. The Department of Energy is expected to respond to and mitigate climate change.

South Africa is a developing country or a Non-Annex1 country. This means that within the international political and negotiation context, South Africa is not required to reduce its GHG emissions.

However, the South African economy depends greatly on fossil fuels for energy generation and consumption and therefore is a significant emitter due to relatively high values being derived from emissions' intensity and emissions per capita.

South Africa must therefore proactively move the economy towards becoming less carbon-intensive, with the Department of Energy playing a prominent role.

ENERGY AND WATER

The department has introduced systems to access investment through the Clean Development Mechanism of the Kyoto Protocol. It has developed the *White Paper on Renewable Energy and Clean Energy Development*, together with an energy-efficiency programme, to support diversification in pursuit of a less carbon-intensive energy economy.

Water

The Department of Water Affairs continues to focus on meeting water targets; managing South Africa's scarce water resources for long-term sustainability; improving the regulatory and institutional environment; spearheading transformation in the water sector; and supporting the development of water-resources infrastructure. Ongoing key challenges include the department's role as a sector leader for water services.

The department adopted the Integrated Water Resources Management (IWRM) approach, which provides a more holistic approach to water management.

The IWRM requires intensive planning to ensure efficient, equitable and sustainable management of water resources and for coping with conflicting demands. The department developed two key strategic frameworks to guide it, namely the National Water Resource Strategy in South Africa of 2004, and the Water for Growth and Development Framework of 2008. The strategy seeks to achieve the reconciliation between the available water resources with growing requirements.

The Water for Growth and Development Framework guides actions and decisions that will ensure water security in terms of quantity and quality to support South Africa's requirements for economic growth and social development.

Major dams of South Africa

Dam	Full supply capacity (10 ⁶ m ³)	River
Gariep	5 341	Orange
Vanderkloof	3 171	Orange
Sterkfontein	2 616	Nuwejaarspruit
Nuwejaarspruit Vaal	2 603	Vaal
Pongolapoort	2 445	Pongolo
Bloemhof	1 264	Vaal



South Africa is supporting the security of its water supply by ensuring the completion of several major new water projects around the country by 2014.



The projects include the Mokolo Augmentation Project to supply water to the planned Medupi Power Station in Lephalale in Limpopo, and the Mooi-Mgeni Transfer Scheme Project, which will include the construction of the Spring Grove Dam around eThekweni/Durban and Umgungundlovu in KwaZulu-Natal.

The percentage of households with access to water infrastructure above or equal to the Reconstruction and Development Programme standard increased to 93,8% by March 2010. Although the rate of increase in the percentage of households with access to water is gradually slowing down, South Africa is likely to achieve the 2014 Millennium Development Goal of universal access to portable water.

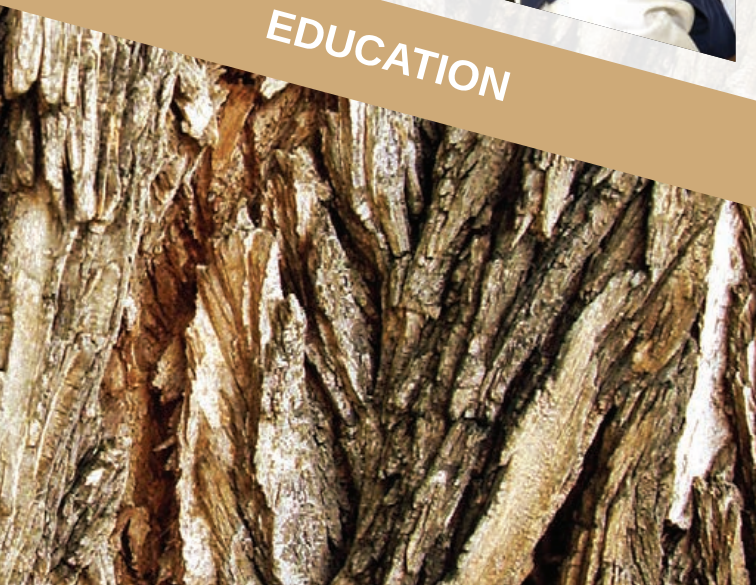
More than 400 000 additional people received basic water supply last year.

Government will spend R2,6 billion on water services in 2011.





EDUCATION



The Bill of Rights, contained in the Constitution, 1996 stipulates that everyone has the right to a basic education, including adult basic education and further education, which the State, through reasonable measures, must progressively make available and accessible.

Education continues to receive the biggest share of the country's budget with an allocation of R165 billion to the departments of basic education and of higher education and training for 2010/11, R17 billion more than in 2009/10.

In February 2010, President Jacob Zuma announced new measures to boost the country's education system. From 2010, all grade three, six and a sample of Grade Nine learners write annual national assessments that are independently moderated.

In 2011, more than 19 000 schools participated.

At the July 2010 Cabinet Lekgotla, government announced plans to get more than 200 000 children between the ages of seven and 15 enrolled in school by 2014 by increasing the number of no-fee schools, while widening feeding schemes. There is also a drive to ensure that teachers are in class and teaching for the allocated school time.

In 2009, there were 12 million learners who were taught by 386 587 teachers in 24 693 public schools; 386 098 learners taught by 24 557 teachers in 1 174 private schools; 646 491 learners were enrolled in 13 736 early childhood development programmes; 620 223 children were in Grade 0; and 5,2 million learners were in 14 029 schools where no schools fees were charged.

Formal education in South Africa is categorised according to three levels – General Education and Training, Further Education and Training (FET) and Higher Education (HE) structures.

Statutory bodies include the Council of Education Ministers, Heads of the Education Department's Committee, General and FET Quality Assurance Council, South African Qualifications

Over the last 17 years, government has doubled investment in education. Access to primary and secondary schooling has reached near universal enrolment figures. A total of 98% of children from seven to 15 years are enrolled in schools; 88% are six-year olds, and 70% are children aged four and five in early childhood development centres.



In May 2010, the 1Goal: Education for All Campaign was launched as a 2010 World Cup initiative. Several organisations such as FIFA and famous personalities are part of the campaign.



The 1Goal Campaign is a coalition of 100 organisations from 100 countries established in 2009 to raise awareness about the 72 million children around the world who are said to have no access to quality basic education. The initiative aims to get all children across the world to school by 2015.

Authority, Council on HE, South African Council for Educators, National Board for FET, Education Labour Relations Council and the National Student Financial Aid Scheme.

Basic education

The Department of Basic Education has identified the following targets to be achieved by 2014:

- the number of Grade 12 learners who pass the national examinations and qualify to enter a Bachelor's programme at a university must increase from 105 000 to 175 000
- the number of Grade 12 learners who pass Mathematics and Physical Science must total 225 000 and 165 000 respectively
- the percentage of learners in grades three, six and nine in public schools who obtain the minimum acceptable mark in the national assessments for Language and Mathematics (or Numeracy) must improve from between 27% and 38% to at least 60%.

Policy

Schooling is compulsory between the ages of seven and 15. All learners are guaranteed access to quality learning. There are two types of schools: independent (private) and public.

At public schools, parents vote on the level of school fees. Poor parents are given exemption or reductions.

Curriculum development

Schooling 2025 is the new action plan by government to improve the education system in schools. It aims to improve all aspects of education such as teacher recruitment, learner enrolment, school funding, mass literacy and numeracy and overall quality of education.

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2010/11

EDUCATION

The outcomes-based education system will be revised, improved and renamed Schooling 2025.

The Department of Basic Education is finalising a comprehensive turnaround plan for teaching in schools called: *Action Plan 2014: Towards the Realisation of Schooling 2025*.

The new curriculum gives learners the option of learning in their mother tongues for the first three years of their schooling. English will still be taught, but will not replace the mother tongue or home language in the early grades.

Each grade will have its own programme of study. This will ease the workload on teachers and allow learners to focus on specific projects and assessments. The number of subjects will also be reduced from eight to six for learners in the intermediate phase. This means that for learners in grades four to six, Technology will be combined with Science; Arts and Culture will be combined with Life Orientation; and Economic and Management Sciences will only be taught to learners from Grade Seven.

From 2011, learners' end-of-year results are calculated as follows:

- grades R to three will be based on 100% continuous assessment of work done throughout the year
- grades four to six will be based on 75% continuous assessment and 25% year-end exam results
- grades seven to nine will be based on 40% continuous assessment and 60% year-end exam results
- grades 10 to 12 will be based on 25% continuous assessment and 75% year-end exam results.

The National School Nutrition Programme is one of the most important components of the Government's Programme of Action. It was specifically assigned the responsibility of addressing children's ability to learn by providing them with nutritious meals.

In 2009/10, the programme reached 7 125 273 learners in the 20 345 schools nationally that provided learners with cooked meals five days a week. Some R83 147 million was transferred to provincial departments to procure equipment to extend the programme to quintile two secondary schools by April 2010.

For the 2010/11 financial year, the programme strengthened monitoring, research, programme advocacy and partnerships to ensure quality meals.



Further Education and Training

Nearly 70% of all South Africans are under the age of 35. Government, through the Department of Higher Education and Training, developed a strategy to increase the ratio of young people that are in education, employment or training by 2014/15.

The aim of this strategy is to strengthen the capacity of the education and training system to provide pivotal programmes to a growing number of young post-school learners as well as adults at turning points in their careers.

Pivotal programmes are professional, vocational, technical and academic learning programmes, which meet critical needs for economic growth and social development.

These programmes generally combine course work at universities, universities of technology or colleges with structured learning at work – through, among other things, professional placements, work-integrated learning, apprenticeships, learnerships and internships.

The FET sector with its 50 colleges and 263 campuses nationally is the primary site for skills-development training.

The FET college system carries about 220 000 students in the public colleges and less than 100 000 in private colleges.

Higher Education

The HE budget for 2010/11 was R8,4 billion. Universities received R17,5 billion and R3,8 billion was allocated for FET colleges.

In 2010, 98% of the HE budget was allocated for transfer to institutions.

Government aims to increase access to HE to the poor by, among other things, converting loans into bursaries for qualifying final-year students.

The HE landscape consists of the following institutions:

- University of the Witwatersrand

The national pass rate for the Class of 2010 was 67,8%, representing an impressive increase of 7,2% on the 2009 results (60,6%).



EDUCATION

- University of Cape Town
- University of Stellenbosch
- Rhodes University
- University of the Western Cape (which incorporated the Dental Faculty of Stellenbosch University)
- University of Zululand
- University of Venda
- University of the Free State (which incorporated the QwaQwa Campus of the University of the North and the Bloemfontein Campus of Vista)
- North West University (which incorporated the Potchefstroom University for Christian HE and Vista Sebokeng Campus)
- University of Pretoria (which retained its name after incorporating the Mamelodi Campus of Vista University)
- University of South Africa (which retained its name after merging with the Vista University Distance Education Campus and Technikon SA)
- Tshwane University of Technology (from the merger of the Pretoria, North West and Northern Gauteng technikons)
- Durban Institute of Technology (from the merger of Natal Technikon and Technikon ML Sultan)
- Central University of Technology (formerly Technikon Free State)
- Mangosuthu Technikon
- University of Johannesburg (from the merger of the Rand Afrikaans University with Technikon Witwatersrand, which incorporated the Soweto and East Rand campuses of Vista University)
- University of Limpopo (from the merger of the Medical University of South Africa and the University of the North)
- Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University (from the merger of the University of Port Elizabeth, Port Elizabeth Technikon and Port Elizabeth Campus of Vista)

Starting from the 2011 academic year, government will introduce free education for the poor at undergraduate level. Students in Further Education and Training colleges who qualify for financial aid will not pay academic fees. This will assist in increasing access to the colleges for students from poor families as well as help the country to meet its needs for intermediate and technical skills.



The registration of Early Childhood Development (ECD) sites is the responsibility of the Department of Social Development in terms of the Child Care Act, 1983. Municipalities/local governments also have constitutional power to provide child-care facilities and grants to associations. These regulations are applicable to both public and independent ECD sites. In 2009, 2 514 new ECD centres were registered. Of these, 1 385 centres are based in rural areas. This is part of government's plan to expedite rural development.

By March 2010, there were 16 250 registered ECD sites in total. Some 719 194 children benefited, including 432 727 children who were subsidised by government.

- University of Fort Hare (which incorporated the East London Campus of Rhodes University)
- Cape Peninsula University of Technology (from the merger of the Cape Technikon and Peninsula Technikon)
- Vaal University of Technology (formerly Vaal Triangle Technikon)
- Walter Sisulu University for Technology and Science (from the merger of the University of Transkei, Border Technikon and Eastern Cape Technikon)
- National Institute for HE, Northern Cape
- National Institute for HE, Mpumalanga.

The Department of Basic Education's target is that, by 2014, all children should have participated in a Grade R programme before entering Grade One and at least 37% of children from birth to five years should have participated in an early childhood development programme.

In 2009, more than 785 000 learners had access to a Grade R programme.





SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY



Pocket Guide to South Africa 2010/11

SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY

The Department of Science and Technology seeks to realise the full potential of science and technology (S&T) in social and economic development, through the development of human resources (HR), research and innovation.

The department primarily focuses on implementing the National Research and Development Strategy (NRDS), which provides for an integrated approach to HR development, knowledge generation, investment in infrastructure and improving the strategic management of the public S&T system.

Between 2007/08 and 2008/09, total research and development (R&D) expenditure in South Africa increased from R18,633 billion to R21,041 billion, representing a nominal annual increase of R2,4 billion (or 12,9%). This is 2,2% in real terms, when the effects of price increases are removed from the equation.

Strategies and programmes

The department has five strategic goals, namely to:

- develop the innovation capacity of the science system and thereby contribute to socio-economic development
- develop South Africa's knowledge-generation capacity
- develop appropriate human capital for research, development and innovation (RDI)
- build world-class RDI infrastructure
- position South Africa as a strategic international RDI partner and destination.

Human-capital development

The Department of Science and Technology's Human Capital and Science Platforms (HC&SP) Subprogramme supports new and emerging researchers.

In 2009/10, it rendered support to 43 postdoctoral students and 287 Honours students in Science, Engineering and Technology. A number of postdoctoral students received funding through centres of excellence and the South African Research Chairs Initiative (SARChI).

The SARChI is proving to be an effective instrument for developing human capital.

During 2009/10, the number of research chairs increased from 72 to 82 with the appointment and public announcement of 10 new research chairs in August 2009.

In May 2010, the South African Astronomical Observatory in Cape Town won a bid to host the International Astronomical Union's (IAU's) Office for Astronomy Development, which will play a key role in taking astronomy to the developing world.

The office will play a central role in coordinating and managing all IAU educational activities, as well as in recruiting and mobilising volunteers.

South Africa was chosen as the winner from about 20 countries that submitted proposals.

The number of students and postdoctorates supported under the research chairs grants grew from 392 in 2007 to 514 in 2009.

In addition to students supported through research chairs' grants, a number of students with other sources of funding are supervised and mentored by research chairs.

These students grew from 252 in 2007 to 397 in 2009/10, bringing the total number of students supervised and mentored by research chairs to 644 and 911 in 2007 and 2009, respectively.

Astronomy

South Africa continues to promote high-technology investment in space science to ensure that local researchers and students are able to participate in international astronomy.

A key result was the launch of the Southern African Large Telescope (Salt) in November 2005, in Sutherland in the Northern Cape. Salt is a multimillion rand project involving Germany, Poland, the United States of America, New Zealand

By October 2010, five years before South Africa's MeerKAT telescope becomes operational, more than 43 000 hours of observing time (adding up to about five years) had already been allocated to radio astronomers from Africa and around the world, who have applied for time to do research with this instrument. Surveys of radio pulsars and hydrogen gas in the deep universe came out on top in the first round of allocating MeerKAT's observing time.

MeerKAT is South Africa's precursor telescope to the Square Kilometre Array and will consist of 64 dishes, each 13,5 m in diameter. It will be built in the radio astronomy reserve near Carnarvon in the Northern Cape over the next five years. An engineering test bed of seven dishes (KAT-7) is already complete.



Pocket Guide to South Africa 2010/11

SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY

and the United Kingdom. Salt is the largest single optical telescope in the southern hemisphere.

South Africa has been shortlisted, along with Australia, as one of the sites for the world-class radio telescope, the Square Kilometre Array (SKA). A final decision in this regard is expected in 2012/13.

In October 2010, South African astronomy received a major boost, in the form of a R100-million, ultra-high-speed broadband link between the Northern Cape sites of the Salt and SKA and the South African National Research Network in Cape Town.

The link will enable local and international researchers to process data from the Salt and the SKA in near real time, and significantly boost South Africa's bid to host the SKA.

The 62nd International Astronomical Congress will be held in Cape Town in October 2011.

The National Space Strategy and South African National Space Agency (Sansa) were launched in December 2010.

The Sansa will be responsible for implementing the country's National Space Strategy. Its mandate is to promote the peaceful use of space, foster research in space science and communications navigation and promote international cooperation in space-related activities.

Nanotechnology

Known as "the technology of the very small" (that is about 1/80 000 of the diameter of a human hair), nanotechnology comprises a wide range of technologies, techniques and multidisciplinary research efforts for application in a range of cross-cutting industries and activities.

These include aerospace, manufacturing and automotive industries; energy conversion, storage and distribution; the hydrogen economy; chemicals; electronics and information processing; as well as biotechnology and medicines.

The Department of Science and Technology has established nanotechnology innovation centres based on a triangular model, involving higher education institutions, government and some industry players. This ensures the concurrent realisation of human-capital development and nanotechnology innovation.

The South African Government has been promoting the need to involve industry in nanotechnology development. The

department drafted a nanotechnology research plan that will guide development efforts to ensure that strategic objectives are met.

As with all new technologies, nanotechnology holds potential risks to health, safety and ethical practices. The National Nanotechnology Strategy requires that the Department of Science and Technology considers these vitally important areas, and the department is working to provide a platform for the proactive identification and mitigation of risks. Through the establishment of the Nanotechnology Ethics Committee and the Nanotechnology Health, Safety and Environmental Research Platform, efforts are being made towards ensuring the responsible development and application of nanotechnology.

Indigenous Knowledge System (IKS)

The Department of Science and Technology established the National Indigenous Knowledge Systems Office (Niko) to, among other things, increase public awareness, understanding, knowledge and appreciation of the IKS. Niko has created an appropriate platform through the Interdepartmental Committee on IKS to coordinate and promote the work of different departments.

The National Recordal System, a large fingerprint initiative of the Department of Science and Technology, will document, record and store indigenous knowledge for the benefit of the communities of South Africa. It will be the first worldwide.

The system also aims to collect grassroots community experiences in local languages. This flagship project creates a platform for the documentation of unrecorded and oral forms of indigenous knowledge for posterity.

The National Recordal System will be developed in phases. In 2010, the department tested the cataloguing system as it documented indigenous knowledge at six sites spread across four provinces.

Biotechnology

South Africa's research institutions and universities are conducting biotechnology research to increase production of crops suited to local conditions, enhance crop nutritional value and improve preservation and processing methods resulting in novel and improved food products.



Pocket Guide to South Africa 2010/11

SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY

Research is being conducted on understanding the nutritional components of food indigenous to South Africa, with the aim of making those with a high nutritional value available and accessible to the majority of people.

South Africa is classified as one of the 14 mega biotech countries in the world, and the only one in Africa. These countries, including South Africa, have a special responsibility to ensure that the potential impacts of genetically modified organisms on human or animal health; on the environment; together with their probable socio-economic impact, are carefully measured, assessed and estimated before they are released. A favourable risk-benefit ratio can only be ensured in this way.

Supporting innovators

Technology Innovation Agency (TIA)

TIA was formed from a merger of seven organisations funded by the Department of Science and Technology, including the Advanced Manufacturing Technology Strategy, Biotechnology Partnerships and Development, Cape Biotech, Innovation Fund, LIFElab, PlantBio and Tshumisano and is mandated to stimulate and intensify technological innovation to improve economic growth and the quality of life of all South Africans.

The agency seeks to build on the achievements of its forming entities, by continuing to support innovation and product development in the sectors it operates within.

Among the key projects and initiatives that receive support from TIA is the Centre for the AIDS Programme of Research in South Africa 004 trial of the Tenofovir microbicide gel, for the prevention of HIV infection in women. The results of the trial were announced at the 18th International AIDS Conference in Vienna.

The microbicide containing 1% Tenofovir, an antiretroviral drug widely used in the treatment of HIV, was found to be 39% effective in reducing a woman's risk of becoming infected with HIV during sex and 51% effective in preventing genital herpes infections in the women participating in the trial.

National Advisory Council on Innovation (Naci)

The Naci Act, 1997 mandates the council to advise the Minister of Science and Technology, and through him/her the

Cabinet, on the role and contribution of innovation (including S&T) in promoting and achieving national objectives.

These national objectives include the improvement of the quality of life of South Africans, the promotion of sustainable economic growth and international competitiveness.

The advice should be directed at, among other things:

- coordinating and stimulating the National System of Innovation (NSI)
- promoting cooperation within the NSI
- structuring, governing and coordinating the S&T system
- revising the innovation policy
- strategies for the promotion of all aspects of technological innovation
- identifying R&D priorities
- funding the S&T system.

National research facilities

The National Research Foundation (NRF) manages South Africa's national research facilities. It promotes and supports basic and applied research. The NRF oversees the following national research facilities:

- South African Astronomical Observatory
- Hartebeesthoek Radio Astronomy Observatory
- Hermanus Magnetic Observatory
- South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity
- South African Environmental Observation Network
- National Zoological Gardens
- iThemba Laboratory for Accelerator-Based Sciences (iThemba Labs).

Science councils

Council for Scientific and Industrial Research (CSIR)

The CSIR is one of the largest scientific and technology, R&D and implementation organisations in Africa. The organisation undertakes and applies directed research and innovation in S&T to improve the quality of life of South Africans.

Mintek

Mintek, South Africa's national mineral-research organisation, is one of the world's leading technology organisations specialising in mineral processing, extractive metallurgy and related areas.

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2010/11

SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY

South Africa's all-electric car, known as "Joule", was on show in April 2010 at the Geneva Motor Show in Switzerland, one of Europe's most important automotive industry events.



The plug-in, zero-emission vehicle gave designers an idea of the final design and layout of the car when it goes on sale early in 2013.

However, South African motorists expected Joule on the country's roads earlier, as a fleet was mobile to gather technical feedback on the car and to gauge public response. These cars, like the show car, would be hand-built in Port Elizabeth.

The car was conceived by Cape Town-based Optimal Energy and originally designed by South African-born Keith Helfet.

Collaborating with industry and other R&D institutions, Mintek provides service testwork, process development, consulting and innovative products to clients worldwide.

Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC)

The HSRC conducts research that generates critical and independent knowledge, relative to all aspects of human and social development. Alleviating poverty and developing and implementing policy are central to its research activities.

The HSRC's research also extends beyond South Africa through projects and collaborations in other African countries.

Medical Research Council (MRC)

The MRC conducts research through six national programmes, and collaborates with most of the world's top health-research agencies to improve the nation's health status and quality of life.

The MRC disseminates research information through the National Health Knowledge Network. The council has established the African Biotechnology Information Centre in cooperation with various universities.

The MRC's National HIV and AIDS Lead Programme coordinates the South African AIDS Vaccine Initiative.

Agricultural Research Council (ARC)

The ARC is committed to promoting agriculture, and related sectors, through research and technology development and transfer.

Council of Geoscience (CGS)

The CGS supplies the country with geoscience data to establish a safe and cost-effective physical infrastructure.

South African Bureau of Standards (SABS)

The SABS produces, maintains and disseminates standards. It promotes standardisation in business and government, and administers compulsory standards on behalf of the State. It also certifies international quality standards.

Other important research bodies and areas

The National Institute for Tropical Diseases in Tzaneen, Limpopo, continually assesses various malaria-control programmes.

The South African National Antarctic Programme manages three bases, one at Vesleskarvet, Antarctica; a second on Marion Island in the south Indian Ocean; and a third on Gough Island, a British territory in the South Atlantic Ocean.

South Africa is the only African country with a presence in Antarctica, and which is also conducting research there in physics, engineering, Earth sciences, and biological and oceanographic sciences.

The South African base, Sanae IV, is one of the few country bases built on hard rock, as opposed to the ice shelf. The Department of Science and Technology has finalised the Antarctic Research Strategy for South Africa.

Mine-safety research

The Safety in Mines Research Advisory Committee aims to advance mineworkers' safety. It has a permanent research-management office overseeing research in rock engineering, engineering and occupational health.

Energy research

The Chief Directorate: Energy of the Department of Energy manages a policy-directed research programme.

This includes transport energy, renewable energy and energy for developing areas, coal, electricity, energy efficiency, energy economy and integrated energy-policy formulation.

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2010/11
SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY

Agricultural research

Agricultural research is conducted by the ARC, several universities and the private sector.

Water research

Water research in South Africa is coordinated and funded by the Water Research Commission in Pretoria.

The organisation's most active partners in water research are:

- universities and universities of technology
- professional consultants
- science councils
- water and waste utilities
- non-governmental organisations.

Coastal and marine research

The Chief Directorate: Integrated Coastal Management of the Department of Environmental Affairs advises on the use of marine living resources and the conservation of marine ecosystems, by conducting and supporting relevant multidisciplinary scientific research and monitoring the marine environment.

Environmental research

The Chief Directorate: Environmental Management of the Department of Environmental Affairs annually finances several research and monitoring programmes.

The programmes focus on, among other things, waste management and pollution, nature conservation, river management, the coastline and marine environment, and the atmosphere.



HUMAN SETTLEMENTS



Pocket Guide to South Africa 2010/11

HUMAN SETTLEMENTS

The Department of Human Settlements aims to transform the country's residential areas and build communities with closer access to work and social amenities, including sports and recreational facilities.

Between 1994 and June 2010, government built over 2,7 million homes for South Africans, giving shelter to more than 13 million people.

Spending on housing service delivery increased from R4,8 billion in 2004/05 to R10,9 billion in the 2009/10 financial year – at an average rate of 23%.

Nationally, over 570 housing projects had been approved and a housing grant of R12,4 billion allocated for the 2010/11 financial year, translating into the construction of 226 000 new housing units across all nine provinces.

Sustainable human settlements

By February 2010, there were less than 2 700 informal settlements across South Africa accommodating more than 1,2 million households.

Cabinet approved the Comprehensive Housing Plan for the Development of Integrated Sustainable Human Settlements (Breaking New Ground [BNG]) that aims, among other things, to eradicate informal settlements in South Africa in the shortest possible time.

The BNG incorporates principles such as the:

- integration of subsidised, rental and bonded housing
- provision of engineering services at a higher level than many other townships, and applied consistently throughout the township
- provision of ancillary facilities such as schools, clinics and commercial opportunities

These are some of the Department of Human Settlements' highlights in 2010:

- provinces spent a total of R12,2 billion, or 98,4% of their allocation, by 21 April 2010
- increased roll-out of sanitation infrastructure programmes in rural areas
- significant progress was made in building local government capacity through the municipal accreditation process, whereby all six metros and four local municipalities were assessed
- the Sectional Titles Schemes Management Bill and the Community Schemes Ombuds Service Bill were introduced to Parliament
- good progress was made in the department's war on corruption.



The new National Housing Code, which was published in February 2010, aligns housing policy and programmes with the Comprehensive Plan for the Development of Sustainable Human Settlements (Breaking New Ground). The code is more flexible to cater for project-specific challenges and development conditions. It was developed on the basis of the four key interventions envisaged in the Comprehensive Plan.



The Farm Residents' Housing Assistance Programme is incorporated in the National Housing Code. The programme provides for housing assistance to eligible farm residents who will hold rental or freehold tenure. It also includes assistance to the beneficiaries of the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform's Labour Tenants Programme.

During 2009/10, the department developed a set of pro forma contracts to assist the provinces and municipalities with the implementation of the programme.

- combination of different housing densities and types, ranging from single stand-units to double-storey units and row houses.

By May 2010, 500 00 informal settlement dwellings were being upgraded.

Rental housing for the poor

Since the introduction of the Social Housing Programme in 1998, more than 42 000 rental units have been developed using the Institutional Subsidy Programme.

The National Rental Housing Strategy, which was approved in 2008, sets the delivery target of 100 000 rental housing units by 2012. This will comprise 75 000 social housing and 25 000 community residential units.

The Affordable Rental Housing Programme is one of government's initiatives to address the housing backlogs. The objective of this programme, which has an urban focus, is to increase the rate of affordable rental housing delivery to 300 000 units a year by 2014.

The programme provides for people in the low-income bracket who may live in housing stock arising out of:

- provision made by previous departments
- public-sector hostels for housing migratory labour in the previous dispensation
- municipal rental stock, which has not been transferred to the households who inhabit the units, and which will

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2010/11

HUMAN SETTLEMENTS

In February 2010, British news magazine *The Economist*, reported that South Africa was the best performing housing market in the world over the longer term.

South African house prices rose by a cumulative 418% between 1997 to 2009 according to the magazine's global house price index, outstripping the other 20 housing markets that were observed by the index.



continue to be used as rental accommodation because of the low economic status of the households

- new high-rise housing stock that will be built for the specific purpose of accommodating low-income households in rental accommodation.

Housing institutions

The department's support institutions play an important role in enhancing the norms and standards of housing, as well as making housing more accessible to all South Africans. They also facilitate the specific housing and housing-related needs of the market, in addition to the role provincial governments and municipalities play.

The institutions are the National Home-Builders Registration Council, National Housing Finance Corporation, National Urban Reconstruction and Housing Agency, Rural Housing Loan Fund and the Housing Development Agency.

Subsidies

A government housing subsidy is a grant provided by government to qualifying beneficiaries for housing purposes. Government does not give beneficiaries cash. The grant is used only for acquiring housing goods and services or the provision of complete houses that comply with the minimum technical and environmental norms and standards.

The following subsidies exist:

- Consolidation Subsidy
- Individual Subsidy
- Integrated Residential Development Programme
- Institutional Subsidy
- Discount Benefit Scheme
- rural subsidies
- subsidies for people with disabilities
- People's Housing Process.



**POLICE, DEFENCE
AND SECURITY**



POLICE, DEFENCE AND INTELLIGENCE

The aim of the South African Police Service (SAPS) is to prevent, combat and investigate crime, maintain public order, protect and secure the inhabitants of South Africa and their property, and uphold law enforcement.

As part of its commitment to fight crime, government has redeployed more resources to the various police stations in the country.

The policy documents governing policing in South Africa include the SAPS Act, 1995 and the 1996 National Crime-Prevention Strategy.

The SAPS' Strategic Plan provides a clear framework for personnel members to focus their efforts during a five-year period. It also provides the community with information on the direction of policing during this period. The department's Strategic Plan for 2010 to 2014 lays down the following key operational priorities for the medium term, namely:

- crime prevention
- effective investigation of crime
- supporting the investigation of crime
- crime intelligence.

2010 FIFA World Cup™

Security forces, together with several other key government departments and role players, ensured that the 2010 FIFA World Cup™ unfolded in a safe and secure environment.

Inner-perimeter security duties were undertaken in five of the 10 stadiums – Port Elizabeth, Durban, Western Cape and Gauteng (Soccer City and Ellis Park). Each of the 32 playing teams was allocated a team security liaison officer and close protection officers.

The SAPS initiated the world-first “International Police Co-operation Centre” to host almost 200 foreign police officers from other playing countries. These officers assisted the SAPS at the stadiums during matches in which their country's team participated. The centre also consisted of senior officials from the Southern African Regional Police Chiefs Cooperation Organisation to coordinate information among neighbouring countries, especially the movement of soccer fans across borders and the coordination of cross-border crime-combating operations.

At the National Joint Operational Centre from where all security-related activities were coordinated, personnel from 22 departments worked around the clock on 12-hour shifts.

This structure was duplicated in each province and at various major events.

Reducing crime

Crime prevention in South Africa is based on the principles of community policing; that is, partnerships between the community and the SAPS. Partnerships between police officers (who are appointed as sector managers) and communities strengthen existing community policing forums (CPFs), which have been in place since 1993. By the end of March 2010, 1 114 functioning CPFs had been established at the 1 116 police stations, including the 169 high-contact crime stations.

During 2009/10, the National Community Policing Consultative Forum amended its name to the National Community Police Board (NCPB). The NCPB serves as a platform or means of communication where the nine provincial CPF chairpersons, the national chairperson and other stakeholders meet. They share best practices, address the challenges of CPFs, advise the SAPS on how to improve service delivery and give relevant guidance on the implementation of community policing.

A total of 532 reservists were appointed in terms of the Public Service Act, 1994 and 2 733 in terms of the SAPS Act, 1995. By March 2010, the Reserve Police Force stood at 64 049 active reservists.

During 2009/10, 8 598 reservists were trained, of whom 7 964 (92,6%) were found competent. In addition to this, short skills programmes on topics such as the administration of community service centres, crime investigation, crime prevention and street survival were presented to improve the skills and knowledge of reservists in performing policing duties.

Sector policing was implemented at 129 of the 169 high-contact crime police stations by the end of March 2009. It is a policing model that focuses on the geographical division of a police-station area into smaller manageable sectors, based on the geographical constraints, the composition and diversity of communities and the specific interests and needs of a community.

The success of sector policing depends, among other things, on dedicated and well-trained sector commanders, active participation of community role players and sufficient resources on a 24-hour basis.

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2010/11

POLICE, DEFENCE AND INTELLIGENCE

The SAPS contributes to various social-crime prevention initiatives relating to the Anti-Rape Strategy, the Domestic Violence Programme, youth crime-prevention capacity-building programmes, violence-prevention programmes, the Victim-Empowerment Programme and community-based crime-prevention projects in the Integrated Sustainable Rural Development Programme and Urban Renewal Programme nodes.

Fighting crime

In September 2010, crime statistics for the 2009/10 financial year were released:

Contact crime accounted for 32% of all crimes. During this time, the number of reported business robbery cases decreased by 51% when compared to the previous year. Robbery with aggravating circumstances decreased by 7,5%. Cash-in-transit robberies declined by 7,3%. House robberies increased by 2,7%. During the 2009/10 financial year, the number of bank robberies declined by 8,8%. During this period, street robberies declined by 10,4% and common robberies increased by 4,4%. Truckjackings decreased by 1,7% and carjackings by 6,8%.

Sexual offences decreased by 4,4%. The increase of 6,5% in stock theft is a matter of serious concern. Commercial crime increased by 8,1%.

During this period, murder declined by 8,6% and attempted murder by 6,1%. Assault (common) declined by 4,3% and assault (grievous bodily harm) by 0,5%.

The police detection rate of illegal firearms and ammunition increased by 2,4% and 61,6% of stolen or lost firearms were recovered. There was an increase of 13,6% in apprehending people in drug-related crime. The Hawks arrested 46 of the top 50 criminal suspects. Driving under the influence of alcohol or drugs increased by 10,6%.

During the 2009/10 year, 110 members of the police were killed during the course of their duties.

Government has identified 12 outcomes to create a better life for all, which it intends to achieve over the medium term.

In October 2010, the Minister of Justice, Mr Jeff Radebe; the Minister of Home Affairs, Dr Nkosazana Dlamini Zuma; the Minister of Defence, Ms Lindiwe Sisulu; the Minister of State Security, Dr Siyabonga Cwele; the Minister of Police, Mr Nathi Mthethwa; and the Minister of Correctional Services, Ms Nosiviwe Mapisa-Nqakula; signed delivery agreements in achieving Outcome Three: All People in South Africa Are and Feel Safe.



Forensic Science Services (FSS) and Criminal Record Centre (CRC)

The function of the CRC is primarily the provisioning of previous conviction reports to courts, while the FSS provides scientific support in the investigation of crime.

Various technologies have been implemented in the forensic science environment, including the installation of the national Integrated Ballistics Identification System (IBIS) database. This has improved case turnaround time and examination quality. The Genetic Sample Processing System has increased the capacity to process more DNA-related entries. A three-dimensional correlation system has been implemented as part of the IBIS, and has improved the accuracy of firearms identification.

Analysts at the FSL received 207 660 entries and analysed 221 337 (including entries from previous years) during 2009/10, which included ballistic evidence; scientific and chemical substances; biological material, for example DNA and primer residue analysis; and questioned documents.

During 2009/10, the CRC received 1 181 797 crime-related fingerprints for possible identification and/or confirmation. Of the enquiries received, 564 143 (47,73%) were enquiries that resulted in previous convictions being identified and/or confirmed. A total of 929 297 non-crime-related enquiries were received. These enquiries are made to determine whether or not persons applying for firearm and professional drivers' permits have had any previous convictions.

Detective Service

The Detective Service is responsible for maintaining an effective crime-investigation service.

Visible policing

The crime-combating capacity within the SAPS deals with the combating of crime and the maintenance of public order. Various major incidents such as strikes and public gatherings were monitored in 2009/10.

During 2009/10, 8 907 crowd-related incidents were recorded, including 7 913 peaceful incidents such as assemblies, gatherings, meetings and demonstrations and 994 unrest-related incidents (labour disputes, dissatisfaction with service delivery and dissatisfaction with security-force

POLICE, DEFENCE AND INTELLIGENCE

actions). A total of 4 157 persons were arrested during the 994 unrest-related incidents in which violence erupted and SAPS action was required to restore peace and order.

Visible Policing is responsible for providing a proactive and reactive policing service. It is regarded as a line function and its components are Social-Crime Prevention, Crime Prevention, Police Emergency Services, Specialised Operations, Borderline Operations and Crime-Combating Operations.

Visible Policing is responsible for combating crime through anti-crime operations, activities at police stations, maintaining high visibility and the availability of police officials at grassroots level. It also oversees sector policing, reservists, municipal police services and closed-circuit television surveillance.

Social Crime Prevention deals with crimes affecting the social fabric of society, including crimes against women and children.

The Police Emergency Services responds to crimes in progress, and provides dog and mounted services. Hostage and suicide negotiators, police drivers, and uniformed units such as the 10111 emergency centres and the Flying Squad provide specialised services.

The Police Emergency Services is also responsible for optimising the Integrated Crime-Prevention Road Policing Strategy, which aims to improve safety and order in the road environment by preventing and combating criminality and lawlessness.

The division eradicates the proliferation of firearms for use in crime and violence in South Africa. The component also ensures compliance with and effective enforcement of liquor-control legislation to address serious, violent and contact crime in South Africa.

Specialised Operations provides a rapid-response capacity for intervening in extreme situations where normal policing is ineffective, including combating public violence; stabilising serious and violent crime incidents; policing public gatherings; rendering specialised operational support (including the Air Wing and Special Task Force); and handling high-risk operations.

Defence

The Department of Defence defends and protects the Republic of South Africa, its territorial integrity and its people.

The Department of Military Veterans is responsible for managing and administering military veterans' affairs.

The Department of Defence, under the auspices of the New Partnership for Africa's Development, participates in various initiatives to secure peace and stability on the continent.

The South African National Defence Force (SANDF) is an all-volunteer force consisting of a regular core force and a reserve force. In addition to military matters, the Department of Defence is involved in search-and-rescue operations, hydrography and securing national key points.

Uniformed members of the SANDF have the right to join trade unions, but may not go on strike or picket.

Peace support

The promotion of peace and security is one of South Africa's most important objectives. This includes strengthening the region's conflict-prevention and resolution capabilities, rendering assistance in monitoring and addressing domestic issues that affect stability.

South Africa remains a significant actor and a major contributor to peacekeeping operations on the continent and elsewhere in the world.

The SANDF has formed part of and participated in various peace missions on the continent since 1994.

Military veterans

In April 2010, the Minister of Defence and of Military Veterans, Ms Lindiwe Sisulu, opened the offices of the new Department of Military Veterans in Pretoria.

The Department of Military Veterans was proclaimed by the President as a separate and stand-alone department, in December 2009, to create a department within government, whose sole responsibility is to govern and cater for the affairs of all former members of military organisations before the

In September 2010, Exercise IBSAMAR, which stemmed from a trilateral government cooperation initiative between the countries of India, Brazil and South Africa, was conducted. The exercise comprised maritime interaction and cooperation by the three countries, spanning two oceans and encompassing the objectives of promoting trilateral exchange of information, international best practices, technologies and skills.



Pocket Guide to South Africa 2010/11

POLICE, DEFENCE AND INTELLIGENCE

In September 2010, the Minister of Defence and of Military Veterans, Ms Lindiwe Sisulu, opened the Africa Aerospace and Defence Exhibition (AAD) 2010, at Ysterplaat Airforce Base, outside Cape Town. The AAD showcased the best of South Africa's technologies, especially the designs of mine-resistant and ambush-protected vehicles, which are among the most competitive military products for international peacekeepers.

The AAD provides a platform for South Africa's defence industry to identify and make the most of business opportunities within the country and abroad.

One of the prominent features of the AAD was the Youth Development Programme, driven by the AAD partners. It is also linked to the Defence Force's own Military Skills Development System.

dawn of democracy and those who served in the SANDF after 1994.

Armaments Corporation of South Africa (Armcor)

Armcor is a statutory body established in accordance with the Armcor Limited Act, 2003. The Minister of Defence is the executive authority responsible for Armcor. The management and control of Armcor reside with a board of directors, while its day-to-day management vests in the hands of the management board.

In executing its functions, Armcor maintains capabilities and technologies that are required to fulfil its mandate.

These include appropriate programme-management systems, the Defence Industrial Participation Programme and the management of technology projects and strategic facilities.

Armcor acquires defence material for the Department of Defence and, with the approval of the Minister of Defence, for any organ of state, public entities and any sovereign state that may require such services.

Denel Group of South Africa

Denel (Pty) Ltd is a state-owned company operating in the military aerospace and landward defence environment. It was incorporated as a private company in 1992 in terms of the Companies Act, 1973.

Denel (Pty) Ltd is a commercially driven holding company, with equity of varying degrees in several defence and aerospace subsidiaries and associated companies.

With its focus on the military aerospace and landward defence domains, Denel was incorporated as a private company in 1992 in terms of the South African Companies Act, 1973. Its defence capabilities, however, date back more than 70 years when some of Denel's first manufacturing plants were established.

Apart from being original equipment manufacturers in certain product categories, the Denel businesses are also engaged in the overhaul, maintenance, repair, refurbishment and upgrade of the SANDF's defence systems and equipment.

Intelligence services

In September 2009, a single department, the State Security Agency, was established by a presidential proclamation.

Some of the priorities for 2010/11 were as follows:

- ensuring that all people in South Africa are safe and feel safe
- reducing crime levels in the country, particularly those which are violent in nature
- establishing operations against domestic and transnational crime syndicates
- developing a comprehensive counter-terrorism strategy, which will guide counter-terrorism operations
- working together with the Department of Cooperative Governance and the Independent Electoral Commission to set up systems to ensure that the 2011 local government elections would be held in a peaceful atmosphere
- monitoring and assessing the manifestation of xenophobia across the country, with the aim of averting the possibility of violent outbreaks against foreign nationals
- rooting out fraud, theft and corruption within the cluster and government in general through joint operations and co-ordination.

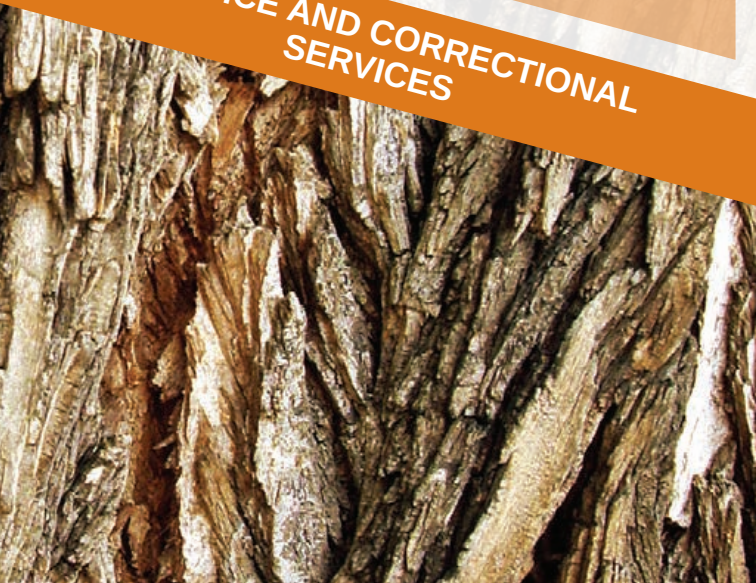
The South African Military Ombudsman Bill seeks to establish the office of the Military Ombudsman to attend to complaints emanating from members of the South African Defence Force (SANDF) and members of the public and to ensure speedy resolution of complaints within and against the SANDF.







**JUSTICE AND CORRECTIONAL
SERVICES**



Pocket Guide to South Africa 2010/11

JUSTICE AND CORRECTIONAL SERVICES

The Department of Justice and Constitutional Development's mandate is to uphold and protect the Constitution and the rule of law. The department is also responsible for overseeing the administration of justice in the interests of a safer and more secure South Africa.

The courts

Constitutional Court

The Constitutional Court, situated in Johannesburg, is the highest court in all constitutional matters. It is the only court that may adjudicate disputes between organs of state in the national or provincial sphere concerning the constitutional status, powers or functions of any of those organs of state, or that may decide on the constitutionality of any amendment to the Constitution or any parliamentary or provincial Bill.

The Constitutional Court makes the final decision on whether an Act of Parliament, a provincial Act or the conduct of the President is constitutional. It consists of the Chief Justice of South Africa, the Deputy Chief Justice and nine Constitutional Court judges.

Justice Sandile Ngcobo is the Chief Justice of South Africa and Justice Dikgang Moseneke is the Deputy Chief Justice of the Constitutional Court. There are nine Constitutional Court judges, excluding the Deputy Chief Justice and the Chief Justice.

During the 2010 World Cup, there were 56 dedicated court rooms in the nine host cities and 37 district and 19 regional courts.

The following number of court officials served in the dedicated courts:

- 110 magistrates
- 260 prosecutors from the National Prosecuting Authority
- 10 legal aid attorneys from Legal Aid South Africa
- 93 foreign-language interpreters and 110 local-language interpreters
- 1 140 court officials
- 327 court orderlies from the South African Police Service.

Through a legacy project of recruiting volunteers, a pool of about 290 unemployed youth members were trained in the accredited Customer Service Management Course. The Safety and Security Sector Education and Training Authority funded the project with R2,2 million.



Supreme Court of Appeal (SCA)

The SCA, situated in Bloemfontein in the Free State, is the highest court in respect of all other matters other than constitutional matters. It consists of the president and deputy president of the SCA, and 23 other judges of appeal. The SCA has jurisdiction to hear and determine an appeal against any decision of a high court. Justice Lex Mpati is the president of the SCA.

Decisions of the SCA are binding on all courts of a lower order, and the decisions of high courts are binding on magistrates' courts within the respective areas of jurisdiction of the divisions.

High courts

A high court has jurisdiction in its own area over all persons residing or present in that area.

These courts hear matters that are of such a serious nature that the lower courts would not be competent to make an appropriate judgment or to impose a penalty. Except where a minimum or maximum sentence is prescribed by law, their penal jurisdiction is unlimited and includes handing down a sentence of life imprisonment in certain specified cases.

There are 13 high courts: the Eastern Cape High Court, Grahamstown; the Eastern Cape High Court, Port Elizabeth; the Eastern Cape High Court, Mthatha; the Eastern Cape High Court, Bhisho; the Free State High Court, Bloemfontein; the North Gauteng High Court, Pretoria; the South Gauteng High Court, Johannesburg; the KwaZulu-Natal High Court, Pietermaritzburg; KwaZulu-Natal High Court, Durban; the Limpopo High Court, Thohoyandou; the Northern Cape High Court, Kimberley; the North West High Court, Mafikeng; and the Western Cape High Court, Cape Town.

Regional courts

Regional courts are established largely in accordance with provincial boundaries with a regional court division for each province to hear matters within their jurisdiction. There are nine regional court presidents and 351 regional court magistrates.

Regional courts hear most serious matters, including murder and rape but excluding treason. The penal jurisdiction of regional courts was increased and, similarly to the high courts, regional courts may pass life sentences.

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2010/11

JUSTICE AND CORRECTIONAL SERVICES

The Department of Justice and Constitutional Development wants to promote access to justice through the use of indigenous languages as languages of record in courts. In 2010, the Indigenous Language Pilot Project was implemented at 27 district courts countrywide.



Between the inception of this project in April 2009 and May 2010, a total of 890 cases was heard by these courts in indigenous languages. The lessons learned during the pilot project will inform the policy framework for language use in courts.

The regional courts will, by virtue of the Jurisdiction of Regional Courts Amendment Act, 2008, adjudicate over civil disputes. In 2010, processes were underway to pave the way for the implementation of the Act. Prime among those is the need to build capacity at regional court level to deal with civil and divorce matters. The divorce courts will be absorbed in the regional-court divisions. This will address the jurisdictional challenges in terms of which litigants have to travel to remote courts to get legal redress.

Magistrates' courts

The Minister of Justice and Constitutional Development may divide the country into magisterial districts and create regional divisions consisting of districts.

By mid-2010, the country was divided into 384 magisterial districts (18 subdistricts), 384 main magistrates' offices (18 detached courts), 79 branch courts and 235 periodical courts. The magisterial districts are still informed by the pre-1994 demarcations of the defunct self-governing states and the Republic of South Africa territory. Processes are underway to align the magisterial districts in accordance with the constitutional dispensation.

By mid-2010, there were 1 914 magistrates in the country, including regional court magistrates. Magisterial districts were grouped into 13 clusters headed by chief magistrates.

This system has streamlined, simplified and provided uniform court-management systems applicable throughout South Africa, in terms of judicial provincial boundaries.

Small claims courts

A commissioner in the Small Claims Court hears cases involving civil claims not exceeding R7 000.

By May 2010, there were 206 such courts across the country. The commissioner is usually a practising advocate or attorney, a legal academic or another competent person who offers his or her services free of charge. Neither the plaintiff nor the defendant may be represented or assisted by counsel at the hearing. There is no appeal to a higher court.

The department aims to establish an additional 60 new courts by the end of the 2010/11 financial year and a further 60 by the end of the 2011/12 financial year.

Equality courts

Any person who has been unfairly discriminated against in terms of Section Nine of the Constitution may approach the Equality court.

Community courts

Community courts, like the Hatfield Community Court in Pretoria, are normal district magistrates' courts that assist in dealing with matters in partnership with the community and business. These courts focus on restorative justice processes, such as diverting young offenders into suitable programmes.

Thirteen community courts have been established. Four have been formally launched and are fully operational in Hatfield (Pretoria), Fezeka (Gugulethu), Mitchell's Plain and Cape Town. Another nine pilot sites commenced in Durban (Point), KwaMashu, Mthatha, Bloemfontein, Thohoyandou, Kimberley, Phuthaditjaba, Hillbrow and Protea (Lenasia).

Court for Income Tax Offenders

In October 1999, the South African Revenue Service (Sars) opened a criminal courtroom at the Johannesburg Magistrate's Office dedicated to the prosecution of tax offenders. The court deals only with cases concerning failure to submit tax returns or failure to provide information requested by Sars officials. It does not deal with bigger cases such as tax fraud.

Traditional courts

There are traditional courts (formerly chiefs' courts) established at traditional community areas in rural villages. The judicial functions of traditional leaders are regulated in terms of sections 12 and 20 and the Third Schedule of the repealed Black Administration Act (BAA), 1927.



Pocket Guide to South Africa 2010/11

JUSTICE AND CORRECTIONAL SERVICES

The BAA, 1927 was repealed by the Repeal of the Black Administration Act and Amendment of Certain Laws Act, 2005. However, sections 12 and 20 and the schedule were retained through a sunset clause until the enactment of the Traditional Courts Bill, 2008 on 30 December 2010.

Special Investigating Unit (SIU)

The SIU, created in terms of the SIU and Special Tribunals Act, 1996, is an independent statutory body that is directly accountable to Parliament and the President of South Africa. It was established to conduct investigations at the President's request, and to report on the outcomes thereof. The SIU functions in a manner similar to a commission of inquiry, in that the President refers cases to it by way of a proclamation. It may investigate any matter set out in Section 2 of the SIU and Special Tribunals Act, 1996.

National Prosecuting Authority (NPA)

The NPA structure includes the National Prosecutions Service (NPS), the Witness-Protection Programme, the Asset Forfeiture Unit (AFU) and units such as the Sexual Offences and Community Affairs (Soca) Unit, the Specialised Commercial Crime Unit (SCCU) and the Priority Crimes Litigation Unit (PCLU).

Asset Forfeiture Unit

The AFU was created in 1999 in terms of the Prevention of Organised Crime Act, 1998. The AFU can seize and forfeit property that was bought from the proceeds of crime, or property that was used to commit a crime.

The AFU has two major strategic objectives, namely to:

- develop the law by taking test cases to court
- create the legal precedents necessary to allow for the effective use of the law.

In the decade since the AFU's establishment, it obtained 1 679 confiscation or forfeiture orders, totalling R1,136 billion. The AFU has an 85% success rate.

Sexual Offences and Community Affairs Unit

Soca acts against the victimisation of vulnerable groups, mainly women and children. The unit develops strategy and policy, and oversees the management of cases relating

to sexual offences, domestic violence, human trafficking, maintenance offences and children in conflict with the law.

Soca aims to:

- improve the conviction rate in gender-based crimes and crimes against children
- protect vulnerable groups from abuse and violence
- ensure access to maintenance support
- reduce secondary victimisation.

One of the unit's key achievements in ensuring government's commitment to the fight against sexual offences and gender-based violence is the establishment of Thuthuzela care centres (TCCs).

The TCC concept is recognised by the United Nations General Assembly as a "world best-practice model" in the field of gender-violence management and response. The TCCs are one-stop facilities located in public hospitals in communities where the incidence of rape is particularly high.

TCCs aim to provide survivors with a broad range of essential services – from emergency medical-care counselling to court preparation – in a holistic, integrated and victim-friendly manner.

In May 2010, the 21st TCC was launched in Bellville, in the Western Cape. The Department of Justice and Constitutional Development aims to establish 35 centres by 2025.

Priority Crimes Litigation Unit

The PCLU is a specialist unit mandated to tackle cases that threaten national security. The PCLU was created by presidential proclamation and is allocated categories of cases either by the President or by the National Director. The primary function of the PCLU is to manage and direct investigations and prosecutions in respect of the following areas:

- the non-proliferation of weapons of mass destruction (nuclear, chemical and biological)
- the regulation of conventional military arms
- the regulation of mercenary and related activities
- the International Court created by the Statute of Rome
- national and international terrorism
- prosecutions of persons who were refused or failed to apply for amnesty in terms of the Truth and Reconciliation Commission (TRC) processes.

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2010/11

JUSTICE AND CORRECTIONAL SERVICES

The transformation of the judiciary remains one of government's key priorities. Through the efforts of the Judicial Service Commission, by March 2010, of the 208 permanent judges, 41% (86) were white, 39% (82) were African, 10% (20) were coloured and 10% (20) were Indian. Overall, 25% were female and 75% male.

Significant strides have been made in respect of the magistracy. Through the efforts of the Magistrates Commission, during the same period, of the 1 914 magistrates, 44% were white, 40% African, 7% coloured and 8% Indian. Overall, 36% were female and 64% male.

National Prosecutions Service

The significant majority of the NPA's prosecutors are housed in the NPS, the organisation's biggest unit. The NPS is headed by a deputy national director who reports to the National Director of Public Prosecutions. A director of public prosecutions heads the organisation in each region, with public prosecutors and state advocates manning the nation's district, regional and high courts.

The NPA is "the people's lawyer", and thus represents and acts on behalf of the people in all criminal trials. The NPA does not seek only to secure convictions but rather to ensure that the interest of justice is served in all cases.

Specialised Commercial Crime Unit

The SCCU aims to reduce commercial crime by the effective investigation and prosecution of complex commercial crime.

The SCCU's mandate is to accept responsibility for the investigation and prosecution of commercial crime cases emanating from the commercial branches of the South African Police Service in Pretoria and Johannesburg, respectively. The client base of the SCCU comprises a broad spectrum of complainants in commercial cases, ranging from private individuals, and corporate bodies to state departments.

Public Protector

The Public Protector investigates complaints from the public or on own initiatives against government at any level, its officials, persons performing public functions, corporations or companies where the State and statutory councils are involved. The Public Protector's services are free and available to everyone.

Complainants' names are kept confidential as far as possible. The President appoints the Public Protector on recommendation of the National Assembly and in terms of the Constitution, for a non-renewable period of seven years.

The Public Protector is subject only to the Constitution and the law, and functions independently from government and any political party.

No person or organ of state may interfere with the functioning of the Public Protector.

The Public Protector has the power to report a matter to Parliament, which will debate it and ensure that the Public Protector's recommendations are followed.

Victims' Charter

The Service Charter for Victims of Crime in South Africa and minimum standards for services for victims of crime are important instruments elaborating and consolidating rights and obligations relating to services applicable to victims and survivors of crime in the country.

The charter identifies the following rights of crime victims:

- to be treated with fairness, respect, dignity and privacy
- to offer information
- to receive information
- protection
- assistance
- compensation
- restitution.

Truth and Reconciliation Commission Unit

The TRC Unit was established in September 2005 to audit, monitor and coordinate government's implementation of the TRC recommendations.

The TRC Unit works closely with the President's Fund Office, which is located in the Office of the Chief Financial Officer in the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development. The President's Fund Office has been giving effect to the payment of both urgent interim and final reparations to the 16 837 victims who applied for reparations and were approved by the TRC.

The TRC identified 21 769 people as victims of gross human-rights violations. Of the total identified victims, 16 837

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2010/11

JUSTICE AND CORRECTIONAL SERVICES

The Child Justice Act (CJA), 2008 came into effect in April 2010.



The CJA 2008 introduces a Criminal Justice System (CJS) for children under the age of 18 years who are in conflict with the law.

Such children who allegedly commit crimes will be handled in terms of specific procedures. For example, a preliminary inquiry is held prior to the first court appearance and takes place within 48 hours of arrest.

If the child shows remorse, a plan is developed to address the crime in such a way that the child does not fall into a cycle of crime and violence.

The plan could involve a diversion option for an offence committed by the child away from the mainstream CJS. The child may be ordered to attend, among other things, a life-skills, an anger-management or substance-abuse programme as a way of addressing the underlying problem that led the child to commit the crime/s.

With the implementation of the CJA, 2008, the relevant government departments have gone ahead with practical steps to improve the lives of children going through the CJS. The number of children being diverted from the CJS during the past five years has increased every year.

During 2002, an average of 2 269 children were awaiting trial each month in correctional centres. This decreased to an average of 1 192 a month during 2007. In June 2010, only 297 children were awaiting trial in correctional centres.

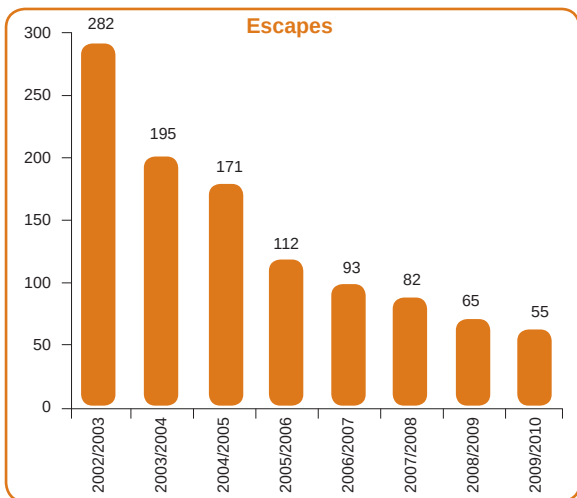
applied for reparations. By May 2010, 15 956 beneficiaries had been paid the once-off grants of R30 000 as a final reparation.

Payments of the once-off reparation amounts are made from the President's Fund, established in terms of Section 42 of the Promotion of National Unity and Reconciliation Act, 1995.

Correctional services

The Department of Correctional Services aims to contribute to a just, peaceful and safe society, by detaining inmates in safe custody, while maintaining their human dignity, developing their sense of social responsibility and promoting the general development of all inmates and persons subject to community corrections.

In March 2010, there were 164 793 inmates in 239 correctional service centres throughout the country.



Two facilities were closed in mid-2010 for renovations.

There are two private prisons in South Africa. Of the 239 correctional centres, eight are female centres, 13 are for the youth, 130 are male centres and 90 are mixed (female and male).

Overcrowding in correctional centres

Overcrowding in the department's correctional centres continues to pose a challenge and impacts on how the department functions and on its service delivery. At the close of the 2009/10 financial year, the department's facilities were overcrowded by 39%. The average cost of incarceration per offender per day was estimated at R123,37.

By mid-2010, the actual capacity in correctional facilities stood at 114 822 with 25 000 meant for remand detainees and 89 822 earmarked for sentenced offenders.

The department is working on a strategy to address overcrowding. It partly manages overcrowding through the transfer of offenders between centres and releases resulting from sentence conversions. The construction of new centres

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2010/11

JUSTICE AND CORRECTIONAL SERVICES

should furthermore alleviate the pressure put on facilities and staff.

In March 2010, there were 162 955 sentenced offenders in the department's correctional centres, of whom 159 303 were male and 3 652 were female.

Care and development of inmates

The department continues to improve the healthcare of inmates. The implementation of the occupation-specific dispensation for nurses will also ensure availability of suitably qualified nurses to take care of the health of inmates and assist in the retention strategy in relation to nurses.

Two correctional centres, namely Boksburg and Krugersdorp, were accredited to provide antiretroviral treatment to offenders, bringing the total number of such facilities across the country to 21.

The department has, in partnership with the Department of Basic Education, initiated an Early Childhood Development (ECD) programme for babies and toddlers who are incarcerated with their mothers. The programme recruits unemployed community members and parolees and train them as ECD practitioners. The ECD qualification will empower the beneficiaries with a qualification equivalent to National Qualification Framework levels four and five.

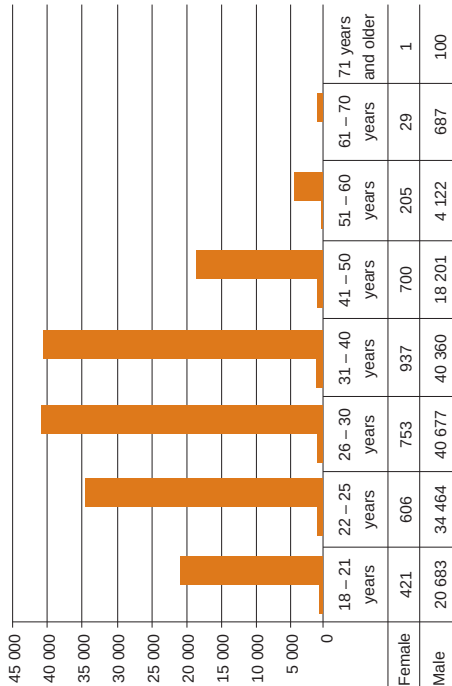
The Pre-Adult Basic Education and Training Programme, also in partnership with the Department of Basic Education, is a mass literacy campaign that also involves illiterate offenders. Volunteers from the community are recruited and trained as literacy facilitators.

Fighting corruption

The department continues to win the war against fraud and corruption:

- the anti-fraud and corruption capacity of the department is rated as the third most efficient of 85 departments audited by the Department of Public Service and Administration
- the measures put in place resulted in an 89% conviction rate during the 2009/10 financial year
- R2,5 million was recovered from some R4,5 million in debt owed by officials who were found guilty of defrauding the department's medical aid scheme.

**Sentenced offender statistics per age group and gender
as at 31 March 2010**







SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT



SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT

Legislation

The Children's Act, 2005 provides for the establishment of the National Child Protection Register that lists all persons found unsuitable to work with children.

In terms of this law, childcare facilities, including welfare organisations offering foster care and adoption, are able to check prospective employees, foster parents and adoptive parents against the register.

The Older Persons Act, 2006 contains provisions to improve the lives of older South Africans.

The main objectives of the Act are to:

- maintain and promote the status, well-being, safety and security of older persons
- recognise the skills and wisdom of older persons
- encourage older persons' participation in community activities to promote them as people.

The amendment of the Social Assistance Act, 2004 saw men aged 63 to 64 for the first time qualifying and receiving social-assistance grants. The full implementation of the Act ensured that from 2010 men too receive social-assistance grants when they turn 60 years of age.

The Children's Amendment Act, 2007 provides for:

- the partial care of children
- early childhood development (ECD)
- further protection of children
- prevention and early-intervention services
- children in alternative care
- foster care

Amounts of grants per month

Grant type	2010/11	2011/12
State Old-Age Pension	R1 080	R1 140
Disability Grant	R1 080	R1 140
Child-Support Grant	R250	R270
Foster-Care Grant	R710	R740
Care-Dependency Grant	R1 080	R1 140
War-Veterans Grant	R1 100	R1 160

Source: *People's Guide to the Budget, 2011*

- child- and youth-care centres, shelters and drop-in centres
- certain new offences relating to children
- the plight of child-headed households
- respect for parental rights by providing that no person may take or send a South African child out of the country without consent of parents or guardians
- the discipline of children.

Social assistance

Under the first pillar, the Social Assistance Programme covers close to 15 million South Africans, the majority (nine million), of whom are children who receive the Child-Support Grant (CSG). Other provisions include the Old-Age Pension, Disability Grant, Foster-Care Grant, Care-Dependency Grant as well as War-Veterans' Grant and Social Relief of Distress.

In 2010/11, government spent R89 billion on social grants in the face of increasing unemployment and the impact of 2009's recession.

Expenditure on grants increased from 3,2% of the gross domestic product to 3,5%.

Government's most successful strategy in combating abject poverty and hunger is its Social Assistance Programme. The majority of the beneficiaries are children who receive the CSG. Eligibility for this grant is restricted to poor children, with most recipients being women.

Most of these recipients are usually mothers or anyone acting as the child's primary caregiver, which is critical because many children are cared for by relatives as a result of the impact of HIV and AIDS.

In 2010, the department extended the CSG to eligible children between the ages of 15 and 16, and will raise this in phases to include children who will turn 18 years old in 2012.

President Jacob Zuma launched Child Protection Week (CPW) on 21 May 2010, in Atteridgeville, Pretoria.

Government introduced the CPW in 1997 to raise awareness and to mobilise all sectors and communities towards the perspective of holistic development, and the care and protection of children. The CPW has become an annual campaign to educate and mobilise communities to put children first.

The event also marked the launch of the Child Justice Act, 2008, which came into effect on 1 April 2010.



SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT

In the State of the Nation Address on 10 February 2011, President Jacob Zuma announced that social grants would be linked to economic activity and community development, to enable short-term beneficiaries to become self-supporting in the long run.

Social assistance and security fraud

The Department of Social Development's national facilities to combat fraud and corruption in the social-security system consist of:

- a toll-free national security fraud hotline (0800 60 10 11) that operates 24 hours a day, seven days a week
- an e-mail address (fraud@socdev.gov.za).

As part of the Anti-Corruption and Fraud Prevention Strategy, internal control systems have been improved and forensic and investigating teams deployed in all provinces.

War on poverty

As a coordinated programme on poverty, government developed the War on Poverty Campaign and the Comprehensive Anti-Poverty Strategy. The former was scaled up to cover 1 128 of the most deprived municipal wards in the country by 2014, while the latter underwent consultation in November 2010 in the National Economic Development and Labour Council after receiving support from the National Anti-Poverty Civil Society Colloquium in December 2009.

The Anti-Poverty Strategy focuses on capacitating and empowering households and communities to take themselves out of poverty with the help of government and its social partners by:

- creating economic opportunities
- investing in human resources
- providing income security to the most vulnerable members of society
- providing social and individual asset-accumulation such as housing, land, working capital and infrastructure
- environmental sustainability
- providing social wages such as subsidised electricity, water and sanitation services
- providing preventative and curative healthcare
- social inclusion
- good governance.



The Social Protection and Community Development Cluster leads the Anti-Poverty Strategy and facilitates synergies between government and other sections of society.

The Department of Social Development's contributions to the development of children is one of the primary means to improve society's human capital and over time contribute to a reduction in intergenerational poverty.

The ECD Programme lies at the heart of the department's goal. By the end of March 2010, 16 250 ECD sites in total were registered. In the same period, 719 194 children benefited from these sites, including 432 727 children who were subsidised by government.

Responding to the impact of HIV and AIDS

The National Strategic Plan for HIV and AIDS and Sexually Transmitted Infections 2007 to 2011 serves as South Africa's primary HIV and AIDS policy document. Recognising the growing need to combat the further spread of the epidemic, the plan hinges on four key priorities, namely:

- prevention
- treatment, care and support
- monitoring, research and surveillance
- human rights and access to justice.

The sustained national response is beginning to pay some dividends as data indicates that the infection rate among women younger than 20 has decreased significantly, while the average national HIV prevalence among young pregnant women has shown signs of stabilisation since 2006.

Home- and community-based care (HCBC)

HCBC is based on the premise that vulnerable children and their families are better protected and supported within the context of their communities. As a result, this programme informs one of the main development strategies implemented by the Department of Social Development to enable communities and people affected by HIV and AIDS to access social-development services. Norms and standards for the implementation of HCBC and support have been developed to ensure good quality of services and to provide a minimum package of services to be rendered. The norms and standards were based on the evaluation of costs and process indicators for HCBC undertaken in three provinces.

SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT

Services to orphans made vulnerable by HIV and AIDS

The Department of Social Development provides care and support to orphans and other children made vulnerable by HIV and AIDS and other circumstances. Childcare forums work hand-in-hand with social workers, welfare organisations and other structures in the community to ensure that the identified children get access to appropriate services.

The department has established a number of community-based drop-in centres where children are provided with meals and lunch boxes before they go to school. Caregivers at the drop-in centres also assist children from child-headed households with homework and involve them in lifeskills programmes.

The Department of Social Development is developing a national database of orphans and vulnerable children (OVC), which will include child-headed households. The programmes to assist OVC include access to treatment, food, skills training and psycho-social support.

Children are assisted to apply for social grants they are entitled to, for example the CSG and Foster-Care Grant.

Community-based care services are rendered at drop-in centres or HCBC centres. The services are as follows:

- provision of cooked meals and food parcels
- assistance with homework for children who are attending school
- recreation
- capacity-building in parenting and life skills
- psycho-social care and support
- income-generating programmes
- provision of ECD services.

National councils

The Department of Social Development strives to strengthen the capacity of civil society to engage actively in social and economic development, by supporting the following national councils:

- National Council for Persons with Physical Disabilities
- Deaf Federation of South Africa
- South African National Epilepsy League
- South African Federation for Mental Health
- Cancer Association of South Africa.

Statutory bodies include the National Development Agency (NDA), relief boards and the Central Drug Authority.

National Youth Development Agency (NYDA)

The NYDA, formally launched on 16 June 2009, resulted from the merger of the National Youth Commission and Umsobomvu Youth Fund.

As the primary custodians of youth development in the country, the NYDA's mandate is to:

- advance youth development through guidance and support to initiatives across sectors of society and spheres of government
- embark on initiatives that seek to advance the economic development of young people
- develop and coordinate the implementation of the Integrated Youth Development Plan and Strategy for the country.

The scope of the NYDA includes:

- the National Youth Service and social cohesion
- economic participation
- policy, research and development
- governance, training and development
- youth advisory and information services
- the National Youth Fund.

In 2010/11, the NYDA created and/or sustained 15 810 jobs mainly through its enterprise-finance and business-development services divisions. It also issued business funding to the value of R14,2 million to youth-owned enterprises since March 2010.

National Development Agency

The NDA is a statutory funding agency established in terms of the NDA Act, 1998 to contribute towards the alleviation of poverty, address its causes, and strengthen the capacity of civil-society organisations to combat poverty.

The key strategic objectives of the NDA are, among other things, to grant funds to civil-society organisations to meet the development needs of poor communities; proactively strengthen organisations' institutional capacity for long-term sustainability; source funds for the NDA; and promote consultation, dialogue and the sharing of development experiences.

SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT

During 2010, the department allocated R87,2 million to the NDA, primarily to fund poverty-alleviation initiatives of community-based organisations and cooperatives in poor communities. These initiatives contribute to the national goal of eradicating poverty, creation of decent work, education, food security and rural development.

The NDA is a critical engine, especially in rural development and has representation nationally with offices in all nine provinces.



ENVIRONMENT



ENVIRONMENT

South Africa is home to one-sixth of the world's marine species with the Indian Ocean on the east coast and the Atlantic on the west coast. The country has more species of wild animals than Europe and Asia put together and a vast variety of endemic and migratory birds.

The vision of the Department of Environmental Affairs is to create a prosperous and equitable society living in harmony with the environment.

Government leads protection of the environment by example. At regional level, the provincial conservation agencies are major role players, and independent statutory organisations such as South African National Parks (SANParks) and the South African National Biodiversity Institute (Sanbi) are valuable partners in the country's total conservation effort.

South Africa has taken several concrete steps to implement the United Nations' Agenda 21 on Sustainable Development. These include reforming environmental policies, ratifying international agreements and participating in many global and regional sustainable-development initiatives.

Environmental heritage

South Africa has between 250 000 and a million species of organisms, many of which occur nowhere else in the world.

While South Africa occupies about 2% of the world's land area, it is estimated that the country is home to 10% of the world's plants and 7% of the reptiles, birds and mammals. The southern African coast is home to almost 15% of known coastal marine species, providing a rich source of nutrition and supporting livelihoods of coastal communities.

Important dates:

World Wetlands Day: 2 February
National Water Week: 19 to 25 March
Earth Day: 20 March
World Water Day: 22 March
World Meteorological Day: 23 March
World Environment Day: 5 June
World Oceans Day: 8 June
World Desertification Day: 17 June
National Arbour Week: 1 to 7 September
International Day for the Protection of the Ozone Layer: 16 September
World Tourism Day: 27 September
World Habitat Day: 4 October
National Marine Day: 20 October



South Africa, as a biodiversity-rich country, is committed to the conservation and sustainable management of biological resources, and is signatory to the following biodiversity-related multilateral agreements:

- Convention on Biological Diversity
- Cartagena Protocol on Biosafety
- Ramsar Convention
- Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species
- Convention to Combat Desertification
- Convention on Migratory Species.

In terms of the number of endemic species of mammals, birds, reptiles and amphibians, South Africa is ranked as the fifth-richest country in Africa and the 24th-richest in the world. It is one of only 17 countries that collectively contain two-thirds of the world's biodiversity.

The National Spatial Biodiversity Assessment by the former Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism and Sanbi revealed that 34% of South Africa's ecosystems were threatened, with 5% critically endangered; while 82% of the 120 main rivers were threatened and 44% critically endangered. Of the 13 groups of estuarine biodiversity, three were in critical danger and 12% of marine biozones were under serious threat.

South Africa's National Biodiversity Strategy and Action Plan aims to guide conservation and the management of biodiversity to ensure sustainable and equitable benefits for all communities.

The country's three globally recognised biodiversity hotspots are: the Cape Floral Region, which falls entirely within South African boundaries; the Succulent Karoo, which South Africa shares with Namibia; and Maputaland-Pondoland, which South Africa shares with Mozambique and Swaziland.

The coastline meets the Atlantic, Indian and Southern oceans, which provide exceptional habitats ranging from cool water kelp forests to tropical coral reefs.

The Cape Floral Kingdom has the highest recorded species diversity for any similar-sized temperate or tropical region in the world. It is a world heritage site.

Biodiversity is protected and promoted through institutions and initiatives such as the:

- South African Biodiversity Facility
- South African Biosystematics Initiative

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2010/11

ENVIRONMENT

At the end of September 2010, the former Minister of Water and Environmental Affairs, Ms Buyelwa Sonjica, and the MECs responsible for the environmental portfolio in the provinces, signed delivery agreements to realise Outcome 10, which takes its cue from President Jacob Zuma's 2010 State of the Nation Address wherein he committed that government would ensure that the country's environmental assets and natural resources are valued, protected and continually enhanced.



- South African Environmental Observation Network
- Biobank South Africa
- Sanbi.

Biomes

There are eight major terrestrial biomes, or habitat types, in South Africa. These biomes can, in turn, be divided into 70 veld types.

The biomes are the Savanna, Nama-Karoo, Succulent Karoo, Grassland, Fynbos, Forest, Thicket and Desert. The Fynbos Biome is one of only six floral kingdoms worldwide.

Conservation areas

There are a number of management categories of protected areas in South Africa, which conform to the accepted categories of the International Union for the Conservation of Nature.

South Africa has a long-term strategy to expand the conservation areas under formal protection from 6% to the international standard of 10% of the total area of the country. The Department of Environmental Affairs has developed mechanisms for the establishment and expansion of protected areas.

The department has committed significant financial resources towards the expansion of formal protected areas, bringing the number of national parks to 19, and the total formal conservation estate to four million hectares. Since 2004, the department has declared four new marine protected areas (MPAs), increasing the total coastline under protection to 20%.

Scientific reserves

These are sensitive, undisturbed areas managed for research, monitoring and maintenance of genetic sources. Access is limited. Examples are Marion Island and the Prince Edward islands near Antarctica.

At the end of August 2010, the fourth People and Parks Conference took place in KwaZulu-Natal under the theme: *Conservation for the People with the People*.



At the same time, the National Co-Management Framework was launched and various issues of transformation in the biodiversity and conservation sector were addressed.

Wilderness areas

These areas are extensive in size, uninhabited, and under-developed, and access to them is strictly controlled. Examples are the Cederberg Wilderness Area and Dassen Island in the Western Cape.

National parks and equivalent reserves

SANParks manages a system of parks which represents the indigenous fauna, flora, landscapes and associated cultural heritage of the country. Of all the national parks, most have overnight tourist facilities, with an unrivalled variety of accommodation in arid, coastal, mountain and bushveld habitats.

National parks offer visitors an unparalleled diversity of adventure tourism opportunities, including game viewing, bush walks, canoeing and exposure to cultural and historical experiences. Conferences can also be organised in many of the parks.

The national parks are: Kruger, Table Mountain, Marakele, Golden Gate, Camdeboo, Mountain Zebra, Addo Elephant, Garden Route National Park (Tsitsikamma, Knysna, & Wilderness), Bontebok, Agulhas, West Coast, Karoo, Namaqua, Augrabies, Kgalagadi, Mapungubwe, Tankwa Karoo, Mokala and /Ai-/Ais Richtersveld Transfrontier Park.

Commercial and tourism-conservation development and the involvement of local communities are regarded as performance indicators. These areas include national parks, provincial parks, nature reserves and indigenous state forests proclaimed in terms of the National Environment Management: Protected Areas Act, 2003.

South Africa is in the process of establishing transfrontier conservation areas (TFCAs) in cooperation with its neighbouring countries.

The conservation status of the areas within these TFCAs varies from national parks, private game reserves and communal natural-resource management areas to hunting

The Agulhas Biodiversity Initiative and the Biodiversity Conservation and Sustainable Development (BCSD) Project, two Cape Action for People and the Environment (CAPE) projects, received top ratings for project implementation from the United Nations Development Programme (UNDP) for 2009. These projects were funded by the Global Environment Facility through the World Bank and the UNDP. The South Africa National Biodiversity Institute's Fynbos Programme provides coordination for both the CAPE partnership and the BCSD Project.



concession areas. Though fences, highways, railway lines or other barriers separate the constituent areas, they are managed jointly for long-term sustainable use of natural resources.

TFCAs aim to facilitate and promote regional peace, cooperation and socio-economic development. The success of TFCAs depends on community involvement. In turn, TFCAs are likely to provide local communities with opportunities to generate revenue.

TFCAs allow tourists easy movement across international boundaries into adjoining conservation areas.

The seven TFCAs are as follows:

- Ai-Ais/Richtersveld TFCA
- Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park
- Kavango-Zambezi
- Greater Mapungubwe (former Limpopo-Shashe) TFCA
- Great Limpopo Transfrontier Park
- Lubombo Transfrontier Conservation and Resource Area
- Maloti-Drakensberg Transfrontier Conservation and Development Area

The National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Amendment Act, 2004 protects South Africa's biosphere reserves, which are generally formed around existing core conservation areas.

In October 2010, an interim National Wildlife Crime Reaction Unit was established with the aim of responding to wildlife crimes and more specifically, the upsurge of rhino poaching and smuggling of rhino horn.

The unit is led by the Department of Environmental Affairs, but includes members from the South African Police Service as well as the National Prosecuting Authority, the South African National Parks and Ezemvelo KwaZulu-Natal Wildlife.





In August 2010, several stakeholders attended the Lead SA Rhino Summit in Johannesburg. The intention of the summit was to improve communication and coordination among the anti-poaching initiatives by South African National Parks, government, police and security agencies, private game reserves and rhino owners as well as other conservation and wildlife organisations. By mid-August 2010, 182 rhinos had been killed by poachers compared to 13 in 2007.

Biosphere reserves include outstanding natural beauty and biological diversity, exist in partnership with a range of interested landowners and can incorporate development, as long as it is sustainable, while still protecting terrestrial or coastal ecosystems.

South Africa added a sixth biosphere reserve to its register when the Vhembe region of Limpopo became one of 22 newly proclaimed reserves by the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation (Unesco). The new biospheres, located in 17 countries, were added to Unesco's World Network of Biosphere Reserves during the 21st session of the International Coordinating Council of the Man and the Biosphere Programme. By March 2011, the total stood at 564 sites in 109 countries.

The other biosphere reserves in South Africa are:

- Kogelberg Reserve
- Cape West Coast Biosphere Reserve
- Cape Winelands Biosphere Reserve
- Waterberg Biosphere Reserve
- Kruger-to-Canyons Biosphere Reserve.

National and cultural monuments

These are natural or cultural features, or both, and may include botanical gardens, zoological gardens, natural heritage sites and sites of conservation significance.

World heritage sites

By August 2010, the World Heritage List included 911 properties forming part of the cultural and natural heritage. These included 704 cultural, 180 natural and 27 mixed properties in 151 state parties. By June 2010, 187 state parties had ratified the World Heritage Convention.

In December 1999, Robben Island, the iSimangaliso Wetlands Park and the Cradle of Humankind were proclaimed world heritage sites by Unesco.

ENVIRONMENT

The uKhahlamba-Drakensberg Park was nominated as a mixed site. In July 2003, the site of the Mapungubwe civilisation became the country's fifth world heritage site. The Cape Floral Region also became a world heritage site at the end of June 2004.

The Vredefort Dome in the Free State was declared South Africa's seventh world heritage site at the 29th session of the Unesco World Heritage Conference held in Durban in July 2005.

Makapan Valley in Limpopo and the Taung Cave in North West were declared extensions of the Cradle of Humankind.

The Richtersveld Cultural and Botanical Landscape was declared a world heritage site in 2007 and covers an area of 160 000 ha of dramatic mountainous desert in the north-western part of South Africa.

Habitat and wildlife management areas

These areas include conservancies; provincial, regional or private reserves created for the conservation of species, habitats or biotic communities; marshes; lakes; and nesting and feeding areas.

Sustainable-use areas

These areas emphasise the sustainable use of products in protected areas such as the Kosi Bay Lake System in KwaZulu-Natal.

Wetlands

Wetlands include a wide range of inland and coastal habitats – from mountain bogs, fens and midland marshes to swamp forests and estuaries, linked by green corridors of streambank wetlands.

By February 2010, about 115 000 wetlands covering over four million ha comprising close to 4% of the country's total surface area were mapped in South Africa. These wetlands are part of the natural infrastructure for gathering, managing and delivering water for human use.

The Working for Wetlands Programme focuses on wetland restoration, while maximising employment creation, support for small, medium and micro-enterprises and skills transfer.

Many wetland plants have medicinal value. In South Africa, traditional medicine is the preferred primary healthcare choice for about 70% of the people. Wetlands provide some of the

The Isimangaliso Wetland Park, a world heritage site that spans 332 000 ha along the north-eastern coast of South Africa, received a US9-million grant (about R65,7 million) in March 2010 for empowerment projects in the area. The grant came from the Global Environment Facility through the World Bank.

Isimangaliso, which means “miracle and wonder”, contains three major lake systems, eight interlinking ecosystems, 700-year-old fishing traditions, most of South Africa’s remaining swamp forests, Africa’s largest estuarine system, 526 bird species and 25 000 year-old coastal dunes – among the highest in the world.

19 500 tons of medicinal plant material, which are used by some 28 million South Africans every year.

Sanbi manages the Working for Wetlands Programme, with its offices based at the Pretoria National Botanical Garden. The National Inventory Project, the first systematic assessment of the extent of South Africa’s wetland resources, maps a total of 121 642 individual wetlands, which accounts for 7% of the country’s surface area. Working for Wetlands rehabilitated 91 wetlands, employed 1 710 people and provided 28 547 training days during the year.

Botanical gardens

Sanbi manages eight national botanical gardens in five of South Africa’s nine provinces. The gardens collectively attract over 1,25 million visitors a year, are signatories to the International Agenda for Botanic Gardens in Conservation and founding members of the African Botanic Gardens Network.

The largest garden is Kirstenbosch, situated on the eastern slopes of Table Mountain in Cape Town. It displays 5 300 indigenous plant species, and was voted one of the top seven botanical gardens in the world at the International Botanical Congress held in Missouri, United States of America, in 1999.

The other gardens in the national network are the Karoo Desert in Worcester, Harold Porter in Betty’s Bay, Free State in Bloemfontein, KwaZulu-Natal in Pietermaritzburg, Lowveld in Nelspruit, Walter Sisulu in Roodepoort/Mogale City, the Pretoria National Botanical Garden and Hantam in the Northern Cape.

The Pretoria National Botanical Garden houses the National Herbarium of South Africa, the largest in the southern hemisphere.

In October 2010, a delegation comprising senior government officials within the environmental sector from national and provincial departments and conservation authorities, led by the Department of Environmental Affairs, attended the 10th meeting of the 10th Conference of Parties to the Convention on Biological Diversity in Nagoya, Japan. South Africa supported recommendations that articulate the role of biodiversity in climate-change mitigation and adaptation.



Zoos

There are a number of zoological gardens in South Africa. The 85-ha National Zoological Gardens (NZG) of South Africa in Pretoria is one of the world's 10 best. It attracts more than 600 000 visitors annually. The national zoo is responsible for the biodiversity conservation centres in Lichtenburg and Mokopane, and the satellite zoo and animal park at the Emerald Animal World complex in Vanderbijlpark.

The NZG is a national research facility, which presents an opportunity for the zoo to reposition itself as one of the world leaders in breeding and researching endangered species.

The NZG in Pretoria as well as the two biodiversity conservation centres and the Emerald Animal World Complex collectively houses 3 117 specimens of 209 mammal species, 1 358 specimens of 202 bird species, 3 871 specimens of 190 fish species, 388 specimens of four invertebrate species, 309 specimens of 93 reptile species and 44 specimens of seven amphibian species.

Marine protected areas

The MPAs are modelled on the success of the iSimangaliso Wetlands Park – with strict zoning of both marine and coastal protected areas. The four MPAs are: Aliwal Shoal on the south coast of KwaZulu-Natal, the coastal and marine environment next to Pondoland in the Eastern Cape, Bird Island at Algoa Bay and the Cape Peninsula in the Western Cape.

Some of the protection measures implemented in the MPAs are restrictions for people who want to fish, as well as restrictions for stowing fishing gear when fishing from a vessel.

Durban will host the 17th Conference of the Parties of the United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change in December 2011.





ARTS AND CULTURE



ARTS AND CULTURE

The Department of Arts and Culture is tasked with creating an environment conducive to the growth, development and flowering of South Africa's arts, culture and heritage landscape.

The Department of Arts and Culture funded 21 World Cup arts- and culture-related projects totalling R59 million and set aside R127 million for infrastructure development projects, which were regarded as 2010 legacy projects.

Arts and culture initiatives

Investing in Culture

The Investing in Culture Programme promotes job creation, skills development and economic empowerment, supporting business start-ups and poverty-alleviation projects.

Other initiatives include:

- Indigenous Music and Oral History Project
- Heritage Month celebrations
- Mosadi wa Konokono (Woman of Substance)
- Youth in Arts
- Artists in Schools Project
- Art in Correctional Facilities Programme.

Legacy projects

Monuments, museums, plaques, outdoor art, heritage trails and other symbolic representations create visible reminders of, and commemorate, the many aspects of South Africa's past.

Government has initiated several national legacy projects to establish commemorative symbols of South Africa's history and celebrate its heritage.

National coat of arms

South Africa's coat of arms was adopted in 2000.

Symbolism

Rising sun: a life-giving force

Protea: beauty and the flowering of the nation

Ears of wheat: fertility of the land

Elephant tusks: wisdom, steadfastness and strength

Knobkierie and spear: defence of peace

Drum: love of culture

The motto, **!Ke e:xaarra//ke**, written in the Khoisan language of the !Xam people, means "diverse people unite".



The legacy projects include the:

- Women's Monument
- Chief Albert Luthuli's house in KwaDukuza, KwaZulu-Natal
- Battle of Blood River/Ncome Project
- Samora Machel Project
- Nelson Mandela Museum
- Constitution Hill Project
- Sarah Baartman Centre of Remembrance
- Khoisan Legacy Project
- Freedom Park Project
- Dulcie September Legacy Project
- 2010 FIFA World Cup™ Legacy Project.

Other projects underway are the 1981 Matola Raid Memorial in Maputo, Mozambique; the rehabilitation and development of the Lock Street women's prison in East London into a museum; the development of the former apartheid state security site Vlakplaas into a heritage memorial site; and the OR Tambo Memorial Project in Bizana in the Eastern Cape.

The Department of Arts and Culture has funded the Lilliesleaf Project with an amount of R5 million. Lilliesleaf Farm, which was once the headquarters of the African National Congress' military wing, Umkhonto we Sizwe, has been turned into a museum to showcase the story of South Africa's transformation.

Arts and culture organisations

The following organisations play an active role in preserving and promoting South Africa's arts and culture:

- National Heritage Council
- South African Heritage Resources Agency
- South African Geographical Names Council
- National Arts Council of South Africa (NAC)
- arts institutions such as the State Theatre in Pretoria, Playhouse Company in Durban, Artscape in Cape Town, Market Theatre in Johannesburg, Performing Arts Centre of

In January 2010, South African soprano Pumeza Matshikiza won the sixth Veronica Dunne International Singing Competition in Dublin, Ireland.

After outshining 59 vocalists from 21 countries, Matshikiza took the top honour, while fellow South African Sarah-Jane Brandon walked off with the second prize.



ARTS AND CULTURE

the Free State in Bloemfontein and the Windybrow Theatre in Johannesburg

- Business and Arts South Africa
- Arts and Culture Trust.

Cultural industries

The creative industries have been identified as one of the key areas in which South Africa can achieve the goals of job creation and greater economic growth.

The Cultural Industries Growth Strategy capitalises on the economic potential of the craft, music, film, publishing and design industries. The Department of Arts and Culture provides support in the form of financing, management capacity, advocacy and networking, and by developing public-private partnerships and other initiatives that use culture as a tool for urban regeneration.

In November 2008, the department bought the Downtown Music Hub in Johannesburg from Gallo/Avusa, with the aim of developing sustainable cultural industries.

The music hub is expected to become a unique and innovative music production entity that will empower all stakeholders in the music industry, especially previous disadvantaged artists.

The hub is a partnership involving corporate and community-based entities.

Cultural tourism

Cultural festivals, African-cuisine projects, cultural villages, heritage routes and story-telling are areas that can benefit from South Africa's booming tourism industry.

Arts festivals

The Department of Arts and Culture provides financial support to various arts and culture festivals.

In March 2010, South African art was again sold by Bonhams in London. Out of a total of 135 works by 42 artists, 82% were sold, bringing in R28,5 million in total.

Works by Pierneef, Gerard Sekoto and Maggie Laubser all beat their pre-sale estimates. The top-priced work was by Pierneef, titled *An Extensive View of Farmlands*, which sold for R3,9 million against an estimate of R1,3 million to R1,9 million.

The sale's catalogue cover lot by Gerard Sekoto, *Market Street Scene, Cape Town*, sold for R2,1 million and a Maggie Laubser, *Woman Wearing a Red Doek*, sold for R554 000.



The Cape Town Film Studio, Africa's first modern high-technology film complex, opened in 2010. It was built at a cost of R400 million and covers 200 hectares. Shooting of the first ever 3D movie on the African continent, *Judge Dredge*, started in November 2010.



The National Arts Festival, held annually in July in Grahamstown, in the Eastern Cape, is one of the largest and most diverse arts gatherings in Africa.

Aardklop, held annually in Potchefstroom, North West, is inherently Afrikaans, but universal in character. The festival provides a platform for the creativity and talent of local artists.

Other festivals that attract visitors at both national and international level are the Joy of Jazz International Festival; Oppikoppi; Calabash; the One City Festival in Taung, North West; the Awesome Africa Music Festival in Durban; the Spier Summer Festival at Spier Estate in the Western Cape; the Windybrow Theatre Festival in Johannesburg; and Innibos, Nelspruit.

Theatre

South African theatre is internationally acclaimed as being unique and of top quality.

The theatre scene in South Africa is vibrant, with many active spaces across the country offering everything from indigenous drama, music, dance, cabaret and satire, to West End and Broadway hits, classical music, opera and ballet.

In recent years, South African theatre has taken the entertainment world by storm with commendable reviews for *Umoja*, *The Lion King* and *Kat and The Kings*. The reception these productions receive in capitals of the world testifies to the high quality of indigenous South African theatre.

Music

While local music styles such as South African jazz have influenced African and world music for decades, gospel and kwaito are the most popular and most recorded styles today.

Kwaito combines elements of rap, reggae, hip-hop and other styles into a distinctly South African sound.

Kwaai Jazz is gaining popularity.

Orchestras

The NAC is responsible for funding the KwaZulu-Natal, Cape and Gauteng orchestras as well as the Cape Town Jazz Orchestra.

ARTS AND CULTURE

Dance

South African dance is unique in its vitality and energy. More and more South African dance companies, individual dancers and choreographers are being invited to perform at festivals throughout Europe, Australia and the United States of America.

Contemporary work ranges from normal preconceptions of movement and performance art or performance theatre, to the completely unconventional. Added to this is the African experience, which includes traditional dance inspired by wedding ceremonies, battles, rituals and everyday life.

The Dance Factory in Johannesburg provides a permanent platform for all kinds of dance and movement groups, while the Wits (University) Theatre is home to the annual Dance Umbrella, a showcase for new work.

The Cape Town City Ballet is the oldest ballet company in the country.

Visual arts

Art galleries in South Africa's major cities (such as the Durban Art Gallery in KwaZulu-Natal; the Johannesburg Art Gallery in Gauteng; the South African National Gallery in Cape Town; and the Nelson Mandela Metropolitan Art Museum in Port Elizabeth in the Eastern Cape) display collections of indigenous, historical and contemporary work.

Universities also play an important role in acquiring artwork of national interest.

These include collections housed in the Gertrude Posel Gallery of the University of the Witwatersrand, the University of South Africa Gallery in Pretoria, the Edoardo Villa Museum and other galleries at the University of Pretoria, and a collection of contemporary Indian art at the University of Durban-Westville.

Crafts

The craft industry has been identified as a strategic sector for the economic upliftment of South Africans. The crafts

The Film and Publications Board, under the Department of Home Affairs, in collaboration with the Department of Trade and Industry, launched the Anti-Piracy Campaign in September 2010, in Boksburg, Gauteng.



On 11 July 2010, a sell-out crowd inside Soweto's Soccer City Stadium as well as an audience of hundreds of millions across the globe were entertained by a colourful ceremony to celebrate the successful conclusion of a memorable first FIFA World Cup™ on African soil.



Colombian pop star Shakira took centre stage, along with local fusion band Freshlyground, with the worldwide hit *Waka Waka* (This Time for Africa).

industry has the potential to create meaningful jobs and the Department of Arts and Culture has begun to consolidate the marketing and distribution of South African products to international markets such as Art Mundi in Brazil.

Film

Film production is actively supported by government; just one initiative is the Location Film and Television Scheme introduced by the Department of Trade and Industry.

South Africa offers foreign producers world-class film facilitation, logistics, talent and administration-management services.

Television production accounts for more than a third of total film/television revenue, with local-content quotas increasing the demand for programming.

The National Film and Video Foundation (NFVF) develops and promotes the film and video industry in South Africa. It is also involved in the development of projects that appeal to targeted audiences and have greater commercial returns. The foundation disburses grants for developing and producing feature films, short films, television series, documentaries and animation projects, as well as bursaries for students from other countries. This ensures a South African presence at major local and international film markets, festivals and exhibitions.

In 2010, the Department of Arts and Culture supported the NFVF with a R10-million grant to set up cooperatives in rural areas and townships that focus on taking cinemas to the people and developing skills in areas related to film production.

Literature

South Africa has a rich history of literary output that has been well received locally and internationally. Fiction is written in all of South Africa's 11 official languages – with a large body of work in Afrikaans, in particular.

ARTS AND CULTURE

The net turnover of the book sector was estimated at about R5 billion in 2010.

The new pop culture in poetry, often referred to as “spoken-word poetry”, is one of the most celebrated art forms throughout the country and beyond. Poets such as Lesego Rampokeng, Lebogang Mashile, Kgafela oa Magogodi, Blaq Pearl, Jessica Mbangeni and Mark Manaka are household names in the genre. There are regular platforms created to give these poets opportunities to hone their skills.

The current generation of writers is also making its mark on the world stage, with writers such as Zakes Mda, Niq Mhlongo and the late K Sello Duiker having their novels translated into languages such as Dutch, German and Spanish.

In 2010, the Department of Arts and Culture, in collaboration with the National Library of South Africa (NLSA), undertook to reprint some out-of-print books that are considered as classics in indigenous African languages.

A total of 27 titles in all the nine previously marginalised languages were reproduced and distributed to public libraries across the nation.

The department embarked on the second phase of the project which involved the re-issuing of a total of 18 titles (two in each indigenous language). These titles include *Apha Naphaya* by DM Jongilanga, *Ikusasa Alaziwa* by OTM Nxumalo and *Megokgo ya Bjoko* by Oliver Kgadime Matsepe.

Museums

More than 300 of the approximately 1 000 museums in Africa are in South Africa. The Department of Arts and Culture subsidises most museums, which are otherwise autonomous.

In September 2010, the former Minister of Arts and Culture, Ms Lulu Xingwana, launched the Iziko Social History Centre in Cape Town.

The launch was part of the Heritage Month celebrations. The centre holds a wide range of reserve collections and archives, including indigenous cultural material from southern Africa, artifacts from the colonial period of the Cape, including maritime and historical archaeology, as well as, among other things, collections of world ceramics, furniture, coins and textiles.

The centre will also focus on the colonial apartheid and post-apartheid periods. An important resource located at the Iziko Social History Centre is the Social History Library, which focuses on the history and people of southern Africa, with a special interest in Cape Town and the Western Cape.



The fifth Cape Town Book Fair took place from 30 July to 2 August 2010. More than 34 000 visitors and 273 exhibitors attended.



The department pays an annual subsidy to 13 national museums, ensuring the preservation of artefacts and collections that are important to all South Africans.

National Library of South Africa

The NLSA is a custodian and provider of the nation's key knowledge resources. It is mandated by the NLSA Act, 1998 to collect and preserve intellectual documentary heritage material and to make it accessible worldwide. It ensures that knowledge and information are not lost to posterity and are available for future research.

National anthem

The national anthem is a combined version of *Nkosi Sikelel' iAfrika* (*God bless Africa*) and *The Call of South Africa* (*Die Stem*).

Nkosi sikelel' i Afrika
Maluphakanyisw' uphondo lwayo,
Yizwa imithandazo yethu,
Nkosi sikelela, thina lusapho lwayo.

Morena boloka setjhaba sa heso,
O fedise dintwa le matshwenyeho,
O se boloke,
O se boloke setjhaba
sa heso,
Setjhaba sa South Afrika –
South Afrika.

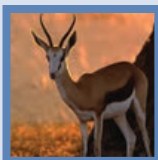
Uit die blou van onse hemel,
Uit die diepte van ons see,
Oor ons ewige gebergtes,
Waar die kranse antwoord gee.

Sounds the call to come together,
And united we shall stand,
Let us live and strive for freedom,
In South Africa our land.

ARTS AND CULTURE

National symbols

South Africa's national symbols are:



National animal:

Springbok



National bird:

Blue Crane



National fish:

Galjoen



National flower:

King Protea



National tree:

Real Yellowwood

National orders

South Africa's national orders are:



The Order of
the Baobab



The Order of
Mapungubwe



The Order of the
Companions of OR Tambo



The Order of
Luthuli



The Order of Mendi
for Bravery



The Order of
Ikhamanga



TOURISM



Tourism has been identified as one of the key economic sectors with excellent potential for growth.

The Department of Tourism aims to fulfil the Government's role in creating conditions for responsible tourism growth and development by promoting and developing tourism, thereby increasing job- and entrepreneurial opportunities and encouraging the meaningful participation of previously disadvantaged individuals.

The department also focuses on facilitating the growth of the tourism industry.

The tourism sector is continuing to grow. Direct and indirect tourism contribution to the country's 2009 gross domestic product (GDP) grew by 2,7% to R198,4 billion compared to 2008. This represents 7,4% of GDP. Figures for 2010 reflect continued growth as well. Tourist arrivals from January to November 2010 totalled about 7,3 million arrivals.

South Africa has already secured 95 significant meetings and conferences between 2010 and 2016. In addition to this, the country has already put in bids for an additional 45 conferences for 2011 to 2020.

Tourism policy

In July 2010, the Department of Tourism together with South African Tourism (SAT) and the Tourism Business Council of South Africa launched the draft National Tourism Sector Strategy (NTSS).

The strategy is a sector-wide plan and includes deliverables for all major role players in the tourism sector. Its core objectives are to grow the tourism sector's contribution to GDP, achieve transformation, provide people development and decent jobs and entrench a culture of travel among South Africans.

One of the highlights of the strategy is the establishment of the National Convention and Events Bureau, which will be responsible for business tourism and events marketing at national level.

The NTSS has identified the following medium-term actions and targets to be reached by 2015:

- to grow tourism's direct contribution to GDP from an estimated R64,5 billion or 3,2% of GDP in 2009 to R125 billion or 3,5% of GDP
- to grow tourism's total (direct and indirect) contribution to GDP from an estimated R173,9 billion or 8,7% of GDP in 2009 to R338,2 billion or 9,4% of GDP

- to increase the number of foreign arrivals from 9,9 million in 2009 to 13,5 million in 2015
- to increase the number of direct jobs supported by the sector from an estimated 575 000 in 2009 to 800 000
- to increase the number of total (direct and indirect) jobs supported by the sector from an estimated 1,4 million in 2009 to 1,9 million.

The final strategy was expected to be ready in 2011/12.

Travel formalities

- Foreign visitors should check before arriving whether a visa is required. Visas are free of charge.
- Visitors must have at least one blank page in their passports.
- Tourists must have return or onward tickets.
- Visitors from yellow-fever areas must have proof of inoculation.
- Foreign tourists may have their value-added tax refunded upon departure.
- For safety, emergency and other information, tourists can phone 083 123 2345 (24 hours a day) when they are in South Africa.

Tourism in the provinces

Western Cape

The Western Cape continues to be one of the destinations most favoured by foreigners.

Some attractions in Cape Town are:

- the Victoria and Alfred Waterfront
- the Company's Gardens
- the District Six Museum
- the houses of Parliament and the South African National Gallery

The number of South African adults who undertook domestic trips increased from some 14 million in 2008 to some 15 million in 2009. This represented about 48% of the population undertaking an average of 2,1 domestic trips in 2009.

The number of trips taken, however, decreased from about 33 million in 2008 to 30 million in 2009. The average nominal spend per trip also declined from R780 in 2008 to R730 in 2009 as consumers tightened their belts. This is a continuation of a trend that started in 2007 as a result of economic pressure on consumers.



Pocket Guide to South Africa 2010/11

TOURISM

South Africa is home to the world's largest individually timed cycle race (the *Cape Argus Cycle Race*), the world's largest open-water swim (the *Midmar Mile*) and the world's largest ultra-marathon (the *Comrades Marathon*).



- a boat trip to Robben Island, the place where former President Nelson Mandela spent most of his 27 years in jail.

Table Mountain is a popular site for visitors and provides a majestic backdrop to the vibrant and friendly “Mother City”. The top of the mountain can be reached by an ultramodern cableway.

Newlands is home to Kirstenbosch National Botanical Garden.

Cape Point, part of the Table Mountain National Park, offers many drives, walks, picnic spots and a licensed restaurant. The park has a marine protected area encompassing almost 1 000 km².

Hout Bay is well known for its colourful working harbour, seafood outlets, round-the-bay trips to the nearby seal island, and a harbour-front emporium that attracts many visitors.

The wine routes outside Cape Town offer the chance to taste first-class wines in arguably the most beautiful winelands in the world.

Superb accommodation is available in historic towns such as Paarl, Stellenbosch and Franschhoek, as well as on many estates and farms.

Garden Route

The Garden Route has well-developed tourist infrastructure, spectacular scenery and a temperate climate, making the region popular all year round.

Not to be missed

- The city of George is at the heart of the Garden Route and the mecca of golf in the southern Cape. It is home to the renowned Fancourt Country Club and Golf Estate.
- Knysna, nestling on an estuary, is one of South Africa's favourite destinations, famous for its indigenous forests, lakes and beaches.
- Just 29 km from Oudtshoorn, the ostrich-feather capital of the world, at the start of the Cango Valley lie the Cango Caves, the only show caves in Africa that offer a choice of tours in various languages. The remarkable caves are a

Top 10 tourist attractions

1. Kruger National Park
2. Table Mountain
3. Garden Route
4. Cape Town's Victoria and Alfred Waterfront
5. Robben Island
6. Beaches
7. Sun City
8. Cultural villages
9. Soweto
10. The Cradle of Humankind

Source: SA Venues

series of 30 spectacular subterranean limestone caverns. The cave system is 5,3 km long.

Central Karoo

The Central Karoo forms part of one of the world's most interesting and unique arid zones. This ancient, fossil-rich land, with the richest desert flora in the world, also has the world's largest variety of succulents.

Key attractions

- Matjiesfontein, a tiny railway village in the Karoo, offers tourists a peek into the splendour of colonial Victorian South Africa.
- Prince Albert is a well-preserved town, which nestles at the foot of the Swartberg mountains. The Fransie Pienaar Museum offers interesting cultural-history displays, a fossil room and an exhibit of gold-mining activities in the 19th century.
- The museum in Beaufort West, birthplace of heart surgeon Prof. Chris Barnard, depicts the story of the world's first heart transplant. The Karoo National Park on the outskirts of the town is also worth a visit.

Northern Cape

The Augrabies Falls National Park, with its magnificent falls pressing through a narrow rock ravine, remains the main attraction of the Northern Cape. Game drives reveal a variety

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2010/11

TOURISM

of birdlife and animals such as klipspringer, steenbok, wild cats and otters.

Key attractions

- The Kimberley Mine Museum is South Africa's largest full-scale open-air museum. Underground mine tours are a big attraction. The Freddy Tate Golf Museum at the Kimberley Golf Club was the first golfing museum in Africa. The Kimberley Ghost Trail has become a popular tourist attraction.
- The Robert Sobukwe House in Galeshewe was once the residence of Robert Sobukwe, an important figure in South African history and a major role player in the rise of African political consciousness.
- The Orange River Wine Cellars Coop in Upington offers wine-tastings and cellar tours. The South African Dried Fruit Cooperative is the second-largest in the world.
- Moffat's Mission in Kuruman is a tranquil place, featuring the house of missionary Robert Moffat, whose son-in-law was explorer David Livingstone.
- Namaqualand, the land of the Nama and San people, puts on a spectacular show in spring when its floral splendour covers vast tracts of desert in a riot of colour.
- A cultural centre at Wildebееstkuil outside Kimberley features !Xun and Khwe artwork for sale and a tour of rock engravings by these indigenous people.
- The 100-m high, 9-km long and 2-km wide white sand dune at the Witsand Nature Reserve near Postmasburg should not be missed.

Free State

In the capital, Bloemfontein, the Eerste Raadsaal (First Parliament Building) was built in 1849 as a school and is the city's oldest surviving building that is still in its original condition. It is still used as the seat of the Provincial Legislature.

The National Women's Memorial is a sandstone obelisk, 36,5 m high, which commemorates the women and children who died in concentration camps during the Anglo-Boer/ South African War.

Not to be missed

- Clarens is surrounded by spectacular scenery and boasts many art galleries.

- The Golden Gate Highlands National Park outside Clarens has beautiful sandstone rock formations.
- The King's Park Rose Garden in Bloemfontein boasts more than 4 000 rose bushes.
- The Vredefort Dome, a world heritage site, is the oldest and largest meteorite impact site in the world. It was formed about two billion years ago when a giant meteorite hit Earth.

Eastern Cape

The Eastern Cape is the only province in South Africa, and one of the few places on Earth, where all seven biomes (major vegetation types) converge.

What to see and do

- The rugged beauty of the Wild Coast, including Hole-in-the-Wall.
- Port Elizabeth, the sunshine capital of the Eastern Cape, with its friendly people and excellent beaches.
- The Red Location Museum of the People's Struggle in New Brighton, Port Elizabeth – winner of several international awards.
- The Tsitsikamma National Park, and forests and rivers in the area.
- East London, South Africa's only river port, originally established as a supply port to serve the British military headquarters at King William's Town.
- The village of Qunu, where former President Mandela grew up and which now features the Nelson Mandela Museum.
- The world's highest bungee jump (216 m) at the Bloukrans Bridge over the Storms River.
- Varied game reserves, including the Addo Elephant, Mountain Zebra and Mkambati parks.

Limpopo

Limpopo is well endowed with cultural diversity, historical sites and tourist attractions, and is an excellent destination for get-away-from-it-all luxury holidays in the bush.

South Africa has eight world heritage sites, namely: Robben Island, iSimangaliso Wetlands Park, uKhahlamba-Drakensberg Park, Mapungubwe, Sterkfontein Cradle of Humankind, the Cape Floral Kingdom, the Vredefort Dome and the Richtersveld cultural and botanical landscape.



Pocket Guide to South Africa 2010/11

TOURISM

In November 2010, the Minister of Tourism, Mr Marthinus van Schalkwyk, launched the report on cruise tourism in South Africa on the *MSC Sinfonia* in the Durban Harbour. The development of cruise tourism as a niche market will further enhance South Africa's reputation as a world-class and globally competitive tourism destination. The global cruise tourism industry experienced significant growth over the last three decades, expanding from 1,4 million passenger carryings in 1980 to an estimated 15,4 million in 2009.



Not to be missed

- The Mokopane vicinity has several nature reserves. The Arend Dieperink Museum offers a fine cultural-historical collection, while the Makapan caves are famous for their fossils. The Makapan Valley is the only cultural-heritage site of its kind. It reflects the history of the Ndebele people and resistance wars dating back 151 years. The fossil hominid sites of Sterkfontein include Makapan Valley.
- With its outstanding game reserves, the Thabazimbi district is one of the fastest-growing ecotourism areas in South Africa.
- Bela-Bela is well known among South Africans, and increasingly foreigners, for its hot-water springs, fun water slides and scenery.
- The Waterberg mountain range is rich in indigenous trees, streams, springs, wetlands, birdlife and dramatic vistas.
- The Modjadji Nature Reserve, north of Tzaneen, is named after the legendary Rain Queen, Modjadji, who inspired Rider Haggard's *She*.
- Phalaborwa has one of the country's top-rated golf courses – just watch out for animals on the fairways.
- The Schoemansdal Voortrekker Town and Museum, a short drive west of Makhado, are built on the site of an original Voortrekker village and depict their lifestyle in the mid-18th century.
- the Big Tree in the Mutale district is one of the largest known baobabs in southern Africa.

North West

The province abounds with attractions, including wild animals and fun nights at the famous Sun City and Lost City resorts, which offer, among other things, gambling, golf and an artificial sea.

Key attractions

- The Historic Route of Mafikeng includes the town of Mafikeng, which was besieged by the Boers during the Anglo-Boer/South African War.
- The Groot Marico region, mampoer (moonshine) country, is associated with author Herman Charles Bosman.
- The Hartbeespoort Dam and surrounds are popular for weekend outings, yachting and golf.
- The Pilanesberg National Park supports over 7 000 head of game, including the Big Five, and 350 bird species.
- The Taung Skull Fossil Site is an extension of the Sterkfontein hominid sites. The site marks the place where the celebrated Taung skull – a specimen of the species *Australopithecus africanus* – was found in 1924.
- Madikwe Game Reserve, one of South Africa's largest game reserves, is home to 66 large mammal species, including the Big Five, and about 300 resident and migrant bird species.

Mpumalanga

Mpumalanga – the place where the sun rises – lies in the north-eastern part of South Africa, bordered by Mozambique to the east and the Kingdom of Swaziland to the south-east. Scenic beauty and wildlife are abundant.

Tourist attractions

- Historical sites and villages, old wagon routes and monuments mark the lives of the characters who came to Mpumalanga

South Africa is home to the world's:

- largest land mammal – African elephant
- smallest mammal – a shrew the size of a human fingertip
- tallest mammal – the giraffe
- fastest mammal – cheetah
- heaviest reptile – leatherback turtle
- largest antelope – eland
- heaviest flying bird – Kori Bustard.

It is also home to:

- 900 bird species – 10% of the world's variety on 1% of its land area
- 6 000 different spiders, 175 varieties of scorpion and 100 different snakes
- 23 200 different “fynbos” plants, making it the richest zone on Earth in terms of species to area.



Pocket Guide to South Africa 2010/11

TOURISM

In November 2010, the national Department of Tourism in partnership with the Ubuntu Institute, the Passenger Rail Association of South Africa and the Services Sector Education and Training Authority embarked on an initiative aimed at addressing the skills gap in the tourism sector through the Ritz Carlton International Exchange Programme. Through this programme, unemployed graduates gain work experience in the hospitality industry in North America.

In 2010, some 110 graduates benefited from this programme and another 252 left South Africa for experiential learning at the Ritz Carlton Group at the end of November 2010. This exchange programme provides tourism graduates with world-class exposure to the hotel environment and international service excellence standards so that students are more competitive in the open market.

seeking their fortune. The town of Pilgrim's Rest is a living monument reflecting the region's gold-fever period.

- The Blyde River Canyon Nature Reserve near Graskop has striking rock formations and a rich diversity of plants.
- Within the Blyde River Canyon Nature Reserve, the Bourke's Luck potholes were formed by river erosion and the action of flood water. The spectacular Blyde River Canyon is a 26-km long gorge carved out of the face of the escarpment. It is the world's third-largest canyon and the only green canyon.
- The region includes the southern section of the Kruger National Park, which draws a million visitors yearly.
- An annual frog-watching festival is held at Chrissiesmeer, South Africa's largest freshwater lake.
- Dullstroom is popular with trout- and fly-fishing enthusiasts.

Gauteng

Gauteng, the economic heart of southern Africa, offers a vibrant business environment and many tourist attractions, including a rainbow of ecological and cultural diversity.

Key attractions

- The Vaal Dam covers some 300 km² and is a popular venue for water sport. Numerous resorts line the shore. The dam is also popular with birders and anglers.
- The Sterkfontein caves near Krugersdorp are the site of the discovery of the skull of the famous Mrs Ples, an estimated 2,5-million-year-old hominid fossil; and Little Foot, an almost complete hominid skeleton of more than 3,3 million years old.

- The Walter Sisulu National Botanical Garden has a 70-m high waterfall, stunning indigenous plant displays and a breeding pair of black eagles.
- There is a ring of hills a kilometre in diameter and 100 m high just 40 km north of Pretoria. These hills are the walls of the Tswaing Meteorite Crater, left by an asteroid 200 000 years ago.
- The National Zoological Gardens in Pretoria is considered one of the 10 best in the world.
- The Constitution Hill Precinct is set to become one of South Africa's most popular landmarks.
- The old mining town of Cullinan is where the world's biggest diamond, the 3 106-carat Cullinan diamond, was found.
- A guided tour of Soweto leaves a lasting impression of this vast community's life and struggle against apartheid.
- The Apartheid Museum in Johannesburg tells the story of the legacy of apartheid through photographs, film and artefacts.
- The Union Buildings in Pretoria was the venue for the inauguration of presidents Nelson Mandela, Thabo Mbeki and Jacob Zuma.

KwaZulu-Natal

Also known as the Zulu Kingdom, KwaZulu-Natal is a combination of natural wonders, fascinating culture and ultra-modern facilities.

Durban's Golden Mile skirts the main beaches of the Indian Ocean. Drawcards include an amusement centre, paddling pools, paved walkways and fountains.

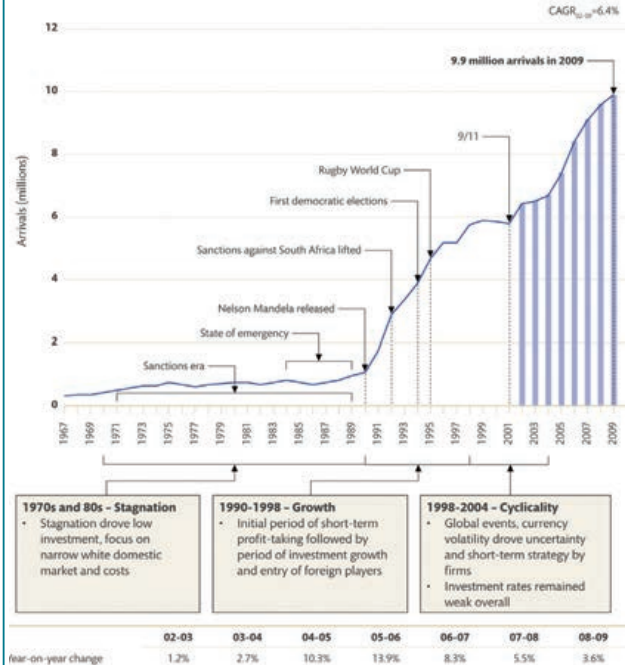
Enticing attractions

- The uShaka Marine World theme park comprises an oceanarium, dolphinarium and oceanographic research institute situated on Durban's Point.
- Spot dolphins or laze the days away on the coastline between the Umdloti and Tugela rivers – the Dolphin Coast.
- The Hluhluwe-Umfolozi Park, one of the largest game parks in South Africa, is home to the Big Five, as well as cheetah and wild dogs.
- The eMakhosini Valley, birthplace of King Shaka, and the Valley of Zulu Kings give visitors insight into the Zulu nation's history and culture.

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2010/11

TOURISM

Foreign tourist arrivals to South Africa, 1967 – 2009



Source: StatsSA, Tourism & Migration release

- The iSimangaliso Wetland Park is one of the highest forested dunes in the world, and has an abundance of fish and birds.
- The Royal Natal National Park offers many scenic highlights, including the Amphitheatre, Mont-aux-Sources and the Tugela falls.
- The Battlefields Route in northern KwaZulu-Natal has the highest concentration of battlefields and related military sites in South Africa.
- Every year around June or July, millions of sardines leave their home on the Agulhas banks and move up to the coast



of Mozambique. Thousands of dolphins, Cape gannets, sharks and game fish follow the “sardine run” northwards.

Things to see and do in South Africa

Just a few of the attractions that make South Africa an exceptional destination:

- breathtaking Cape Town with its laid-back, welcoming attitude and vibrant nightlife, nestling at the foot of Table Mountain
- Cape Point
- the delights of Sun City and the Lost City, and many other first-rate casino resorts
- walking in the spectacular Drakensberg mountains
- the chance to learn how to say “hello” in the country’s 11 official languages
- the country’s Blue Flag beaches
- the variety of national parks and transfrontier conservation areas
- eight world heritage sites
- the lilac-breasted roller, the blue crane and the other 900 bird species to be spotted in southern Africa
- the Big Five and other wild animals found in the many parks and game reserves
- the strange halfmens (half-human) and the exotic baobab, just some of South Africa’s many amazing trees and plants
- battlefields on which imperial Britain fought Zulus, Xhosas and Boers
- the dazzling floral displays which carpet Namaqualand every year
- the mountains, forests and beaches of the Garden Route
- the silence and solitude of the Karoo’s wide-open spaces
- country hospitality (and home cooking) in hundreds of picturesque towns and villages across South Africa
- the endless golden beaches of the Eastern Cape
- fly-fishing in stunning scenery with first-class accommodation
- fabulous golf courses that produced the likes of Gary Player, Ernie Els, Retief Goosen and Louis Oosthuizen
- an array of cultural villages, arts festivals, rock paintings and museums
- the adrenaline rush of the many adventure-tourism opportunities available in the country.



Twenty-seven South African beaches were awarded Blue Flag status in 2010. The Blue Flag is a voluntary eco-label awarded to over 3 450 beaches and marinas in 41 countries. It is an international award scheme that is awarded to those beaches and marinas that have achieved the highest quality in water, facilities, safety, environmental education and management. South African beaches that have received Blue Flag accreditation include:

- MacDougall's Bay, Port Nolloth
- Yzerfontein main beach, Yzerfontein
- Clifton fourth beach, Cape Town
- Camps Bay, Cape Town
- Muizenberg, Cape Town
- Strandfontein beach, Cape Town
- Mnandi beach, Cape Town
- Bikini beach, Gordon's Bay
- Kleinmond beach, near Hermanus
- Hawston beach, near Hermanus
- Grotto beach, Hermanus
- Lappiesbaai, Stilbaai, Southern Cape
- Witsand, at the mouth of the Breede Rivier
- Santos beach, Mossel Bay
- Hartenbos beach, Mossel Bay
- Robberg fifth beach, Plettenberg Bay
- Dolphin beach, Jeffrey's Bay
- Humewood beach, Port Elizabeth
- Wells Estate, north of Port Elizabeth
- Kariega main beach, Kenton-on-Sea
- Kelly's Beach, Port Alfred
- Umzumbe (Pumula) on the KwaZulu-Natal south coast
- Lucien beach near Margate (back in programme)
- Trafalgar beach, South Coast, KwaZulu-Natal
- Marina beach, South Coast, KwaZulu-Natal
- Ramsgate beach, near Margate
- Margate beach.



HEALTH



The Department of Health's 10-Point Plan for the health sector includes the following priorities:

- providing strategic leadership and creating a social contract for better health outcomes
- implementing the National Health Insurance (NHI) system
- improving quality of health services
- overhauling the healthcare system and improving its management
- improving human-resource (HR) management, planning and development
- revitalising infrastructure
- accelerating implementation of the HIV and AIDS and Sexually Transmitted Infections Strategic Plan 2007 – 2011 and increasing focus on tuberculosis (TB) and other communicable diseases
- reviewing the drug policy
- improving the effectiveness of the health system
- strengthening research and development.

Funding

The budget of the Department of Health grew by 16% from R18 billion in 2009/10 to R21,5 billion in 2010/11. Policy areas that received additional funding included:

- the HIV and AIDS Conditional Grant
- the Hospital Revitalisation Conditional Grant
- the Mass Measles Immunisation Campaign
- stabilising personnel expenditure
- improving the conditions of service for employees in the department, including the National Health Laboratory Service (NHLS) and South African Medical Research Council.

Health status

Child health

Immunisation coverage is a significant element in the prevention of child mortality as it is associated with child survival and infant and under-five mortality rates.

Immunisation against measles in South Africa increased between 2001 and 2009, from 68,5% of children aged under one year in 2001 to 98,3% of children of the same age in 2009.

There was an increase in the proportion of children under one year of age who had received all their primary vaccines for TB, diphtheria, whooping cough, tetanus, polio, measles, hepatitis B and haemophilus influenza from 2001 to 2009. The immunisation rates for primary vaccines increased from 66,4% in 2001 to 95,3% in 2009.

Maternal and women's health

The fifth Millennium Development Goal requires countries to improve maternal health and reduce their Maternal Mortality Ratio by 75% by 2015.

The data based on reported live births from the District Health Information System (DHIS) (2010) shows that the percentage of women in South Africa whose live birth occurred in a health facility increased from 76,6% in 2001 to 94,1% in 2009. This indicates a significant improvement in the extent of services provided at healthcare facilities in South Africa.

Access to and utilisation of antenatal care services has an impact on pregnancy outcome, child survival and maternal health.

According to the DHIS, 97% of pregnant women utilised antenatal care during 2009 (Department of Health, 2010).

The data shows that South Africa has demonstrated commitment to reducing maternal mortality. It is evident that expanded health infrastructure, enhanced access and increased usage are beginning to translate into improved health outcomes for women.

Communicable disease control

HIV prevalence in South Africa appears to be stabilising after peaking in the 1990s and early 2000s. South Africa has the largest Antiretroviral (ARV) Therapy Programme in the world.

In April 2010, the upscaled HIV and AIDS Prevention and Treatment Plan was launched. Measures include that:

- all children under one year of age receive ARV treatment if they test HIV-positive, irrespective of CD4 level
- all patients with both TB and HIV get ARV treatment if their CD4 count is 350 or less
- all pregnant HIV-positive women with a CD4 count of 350 or less are started on ARV treatment
- all other HIV-positive pregnant women not falling in this category are put on treatment at 14 weeks of pregnancy to protect the baby
- a massive counselling and testing campaign has been launched, and all 4 300 public health institutions in the country are ready to receive and assist patients. By March 2011, six million people were tested.

Since April 2010, government had also begun to expand the Prevention of Mother-to-Child Transmission Programme.

In the drive to prevent HIV and AIDS, government aims to increase the provision of male condoms from 450 million per year to more than 1,5 billion. The Department of Health is also

revitalising its male sexual reproductive health programme by increasing the provision of medical male circumcision services.

A characteristic of AIDS in South Africa is the interlinkage with the prevalence of TB.

The HIV/TB co-infection rates exceed 70%, with TB being the most common opportunistic infection among them in 2010.

Drug-resistant forms of TB, MDR-TB (multi-drug-resistant) and extensively drug-resistant (XDR-TB) have increased significantly, with about 5 000 and 500 diagnosed respectively in 2009.

In keeping with the targets in the outcome-based approach, the Department of Health aims to increase the TB cure rate from 64% to 85% by 2014/15. Based on a review of the TB Control Programme, led by the World Health Organisation, the department developed concrete and clear strategies to strengthen this programme.

During the 2010 financial year, the department trained 3 000 health workers in the management of TB. It also expanded its Tuberculosis Directly Observed Short-Course (TB Dots) Programme and trained 2 500 community health workers as Dots supporters. This will assist in reducing the defaulter rate of TB patients from 8,5% in 2010 to less than 5,5% by 2012/13.

The number of deaths due to malaria decreased from 360 per year in 1999 to 54 in 2008, which represents a decrease of 85% over the period. An increase of 12,4% in the number of houses or structures sprayed with insecticide was witnessed during the 2004 to 2009 period.

Policy

Improving quality of service

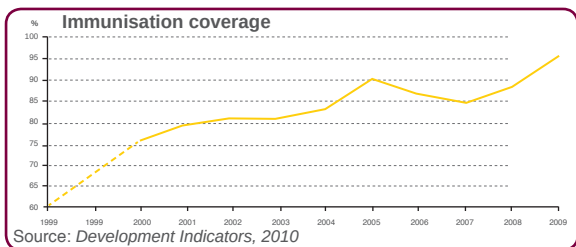
A draft information and communications technology strategy has been produced. The national core standards for health facilities, which were first produced in 2008, and used to assess 27 hospitals, were revised in 2009.

These standards were expected to be finalised in 2010/11 and used to audit 75% of health establishments by 2013.

Quality improvement plans will be developed in 70% of all public-sector facilities by 2013, focusing on improving six key areas, namely patient safety, infection prevention and control, availability of medicines, waiting times, cleanliness and staff

Over the nine-year period 2000 to 2009, there was an increase in the total number of nurses on the registers – from 171 645 to 221 817.





attitudes. By 2013, 90% of public-sector hospitals will be conducting patient satisfaction surveys.

National Health Insurance

By mid-2010, a solid foundation was laid for the introduction of the NHI. A dedicated NHI technical support unit was established within the Department of Health to steer the implementation.

Through the NHI, the Department of Health will ensure access to good quality and affordable health services for all South Africans. The major objective is to put into place the necessary funding and health service-delivery mechanisms that will enable the creation of an efficient, equitable and sustainable health system.

Nutrition

The work of the Department of Health is critical in improving children's nutrition levels. Key targets by 2014 include:

- decreasing the percentage of the total population who experiences hunger from 52% to 30%, using national food consumption survey data
- dropping the rate of undernutrition of children from 9,3% to 5%
- keeping the Consumer Price Index stable for poor people (which is heavily dependent on the prices of food)
- establishing more than 67 920 community, institutional and school gardens to enable at least 30% of poor households to produce some of their food and improve income.

In 2010, the department continued to implement strategies to improve the nutritional status of communities.

Health team

By November 2010, the core team of practising medical practitioners in South Africa consisted of:

- 36 000 registered medical practitioners

- 54 673 emergency care personnel
- 464 dental therapists
- 946 oral hygienists

South Africa has a shortage of certain health professionals such as physiotherapists, dieticians and radiographers.

National Health Laboratory Service

The NHLS is the largest diagnostic pathology service in South Africa, with over 250 laboratories serving 80% of the country's population. All laboratories provide laboratory diagnostic services to the national and provincial departments of health, provincial hospitals, local governments and medical practitioners.

The NHLS conducts health-related research appropriate to the needs of the broader population, including research into HIV and AIDS, TB, malaria, pneumococcal infections, occupational health, cancer and malnutrition. The NHLS trains pathologists, medical scientists, occupational health practitioners, technologists and technicians in pathology disciplines.

Medical schemes

The total number of registered medical schemes dropped from 110 in January 2009 to 105 in January 2010 (4,5% decrease). The number of open schemes reduced from 32 in 2009 to 30 in 2010 (6,3% decrease), with restricted schemes falling from 78 to 75 (3,8% decrease) during the same period.

These figures include schemes which affect their contributions mid-year.

Integrated Management of Childhood Illnesses (IMCI)

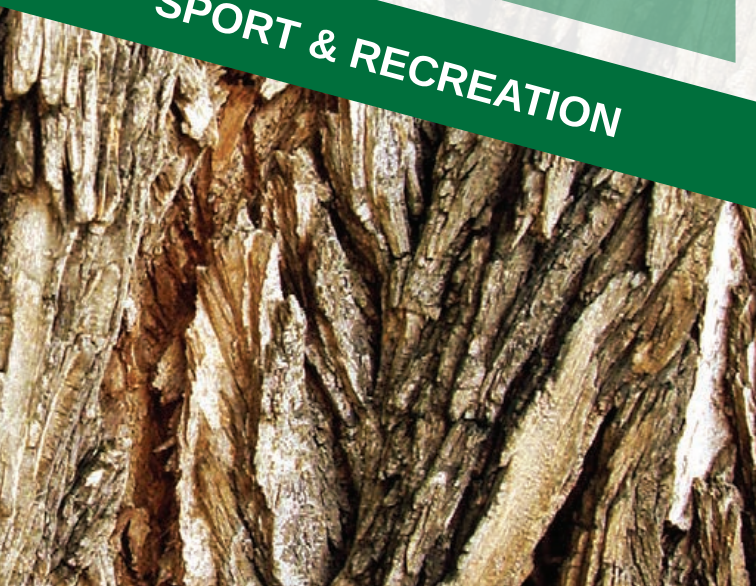
IMCI promotes child health and improves child survival as part of the National Plan of Action for Children. It is being instituted as part of the Department of Health's policy on the National Health System for Universal Primary Care.

South Africa's nurses and doctors are well trained to treat all diseases by using the IMCI Strategy. Diseases such as pneumonia, malaria, meningitis, diarrhoea and malnutrition are easily managed. In South Africa, the IMCI Strategy has been adapted to include HIV assessment and classification.

The strategy tries to integrate all interventions relating to children to ensure that a package of care is offered to each child.



SPORT & RECREATION



Pocket Guide to South Africa 2010/11

SPORT & RECREATION

From 11 June to 11 July 2010, South Africa successfully hosted the 2010 FIFA World Cup™, which saw 32 teams and an estimated 450 000 ticket holders converge on South Africa.

The success of the tournament showed the power of sport and recreation in nation-building as well as economic and social development.

Sport and Recreation South Africa (SRSA) intends carrying this forward by contributing towards transforming South Africa into a country that truly reflects the diversity of its people.

The SRSA has a number of flagship programmes through which it implements its objectives.

These programmes touch the lives of millions of South Africans, from schoolchildren participating in school sport, communities sharing in the benefits of mass participation programmes and events, and organisations benefiting from the SRSA's financial and logistical support.

2010 sports highlights

Archery

The South African mens archery team returned with a gold medal from the Archery World Cup held in Antalya, Turkey, in June 2010.

Athletics

World champion in the 800 m, Mbulaeni Mulaudzi, won the International Association of Athletic Federations (IAAF) Challenge in Madrid, Spain, in July 2010.

Luvo Manyonga won the long jump gold medal at the IAAF World Junior Championships in Moncton, Canada, in July 2010.

In the same month, Simon Magakwe claimed victory in the 200 m at the *Weltklasse in Biberach* Meeting in Germany.

Cricket

South Africa beat India by an innings and six runs despite a fighting century by Sachin Tendulkar on the fourth day of the first Test in February 2010 to go 1-0 up in the two-match series.

In January 2010, South Africa and England drew the Test series one all.

India won the second Test.

Hashim Amla won the Man of the Match Award in both test matches as well as the Man of the Series. He was only dismissed once in amassing 490 runs in four innings.

2010 FIFA World Cup™

South Africa became the first African country to host the 2010 FIFA World Cup™, from 11 June to 11 July 2010. Thirty-two countries qualified for the tournament. Six of these were from Africa, namely: South Africa, Ghana, Cote d'Ivoire, Nigeria, Cameroon and Algeria. The World Cup took place in eight of South Africa's nine provinces, using 10 stadiums in nine host cities. Five of the 10 stadiums were new and the rest had been upgraded for the event.



Quarter-finals

Uruguay (4) 1 – 1 (2) Ghana

Date: 2 July 2010

Stadium: Soccer City Stadium (now called First National Bank Stadium), Soweto

Attendance: 84 017

Netherlands 2 – 1 Brazil

Date: 2 July 2010

Stadium: Nelson Mandela Stadium, Port Elizabeth

Attendance: 40 186

Argentina 0 – 4 Germany

Date: 3 July 2010

Stadium: Green Point Stadium, Cape Town

Attendance: 64 100

Paraguay 0 – 1 Spain

Date: 3 July 2010

Stadium: Ellis Park Stadium, Johannesburg

Attendance: 55 359

Semi-finals

Uruguay 2 – 3 Netherlands

Date: 6 July 2010

Stadium: Green Point Stadium, Cape Town

Attendance: 62 479

Germany 0 – 1 Spain

Date: 7 July 2010

Stadium: Moses Mabhida Stadium, Durban

Attendance: 60 960

Final

Netherlands 0 – 1 Spain

Date: 11 July 2010

Stadium: Soccer City Stadium, Soweto

Attendance: 84 492

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2010/11

SPORT & RECREATION

Spain won the World Cup for the first time when they beat the Netherlands 1-0 after extra time, thanks to a goal by midfielder Andres Iniesta. The defeat was heartbreaking for the Dutch, who were down to 10 men after John Heitinga was sent off in extra time. It was their third World Cup final loss after 1974 and 1978.

A total of 3,18 million spectators paid to watch the 64 matches of the tournament, which is the third-highest aggregate attendance behind the United States of America in 1994 and Germany in 2006.

According to FIFA President, Sepp Blatter, South Africa scored nine out of 10 for its organisation of the 2010 World Cup. It was a huge success for both South Africa and the continent of Africa.

In October 2010, South Africa hosted the inaugural International Cricket Council (ICC) Women's Cricket Challenge, which took place in Potchefstroom, North West. South Africa's women's cricket team won the one day international portion of the ICC Women's Cricket Challenge.

In November, South Africa and Pakistan drew the test series 1-1.

Cycling

In July 2010, nine-year-old Georgina Grassie of Johannesburg became the nation's newest world champion at the Union Cycliste International (UCI) BMX World Championships at the Royal Showgrounds in Pietermaritzburg when she won her final to give the host nation its first title of the championships.

South Africa received three medals on the opening day. Durban racer Axel Webster took the silver medal in the 11 boys final, while the third medal came from Nicole von Munster in the 10 girls final.

At the same event, Sifiso Nhlapo won a silver medal as men's runner-up. Fifty-two-year-old Sharlene McGillvray won gold for South Africa in the women's 45-plus age group, while Kloof schoolgirl Teagan O'Keefe claimed the elite junior girls' title.

Special Olympics athletes from around South Africa paired up with football legends and celebrities in the inaugural Unity Cup, which took place during the 2010 FIFA World Cup™ ahead of the World Cup quarter-final between Argentina and Germany in Cape Town.

President Jacob Zuma, as captain of his team, led a list of celebrities and football legends who participated alongside Special Olympics athletes at Green Point Stadium.

While the World Cup brought the greatest football teams in the world to South Africa, the Football for Hope Festival 2010 assembled 32 teams that represented the power of the game to bring about social change.



From 4 to 10 July 2010, 32 mixed teams of boys and girls aged 15 to 18 years from across the globe were in Alexandra, in north-eastern Johannesburg, for a festival of football. The participating teams represented organisations that use football to tackle issues such as ethnic violence, environmental pollution, HIV and AIDS education, landmine education and gang culture.

In August 2010, Bernard Esterhuizen won gold in the one-kilometre track cycling event time trial at the 2010 UCI Junior World Track Championships in Montichiari, Italy.

South Africans David Brown and Lynette Burger won the men's and women's titles respectively at the 2010 Deutsche Bank Tour of Mauritius 100-km road cycling race in Mon Choisy in October 2010.

Golf

Louis Oosthuizen narrowly missed out on his first Professional Golfers Association (PGA) European Tour title when he finished runner-up in the Trophée Hassan II in Morocco in March 2010 after leading into the final round.

He followed this with a win at the Open de Andalucia de Golf in Malaga.

In March 2010, Ernie Els won the World Golf Championships at Doral, Florida, and went on to capture the rain-delayed Arnold Palmer Invitational in Orlando for his second straight victory on the PGA Tour.

In July 2010, Oosthuizen won the British Open Championship, capturing golf's biggest prize by seven strokes with a display of front-running.

South Africa's Lee-Anne Pace won the European Tour Wales Championship by three shots in August 2010 for her second career title.

In October 2010, Pace was top of the Ladies European Tour's Order of Merit after firing a final round six-under-par 66 to win the Sanya Ladies Open in China.

With her fourth victory of the season, Pace moved ahead of England's Laura Davies as the leading money winner on the tour, with € 295 704,93 to her name. Fellow South African Ashleigh Simon was in 14th place with earnings of € 101 989,10.

SPORT & RECREATION

In December 2010, Pace became the first South African to top the Ladies European Tour Money List at the Dubai Ladies Masters. She also won the 2010 Players' Player of the Year.

Three-times major winner and former world number one Els was voted into the World Golf Hall of Fame as part of the class of 2011.

Rogaine

Nicholas Mulder and Ryno Griesel finished second in the ninth World Rogaining Championships in New Zealand in November 2010.

Rugby

In February 2010, the South African rugby team was nominated by the world's media for the coveted 2010 Laureus World Team of the Year Award.

South African rugby teams, the Bulls and the Stormers, hosted both Super 14 semi-finals in May 2010, with the showdown between the Bulls and New Zealand outfit, the Crusaders, making history because of the venue alone: Orlando Stadium in Soweto.

It was the first time that the famous township hosted a match featuring a major rugby franchise.

The defending champion Bulls beat the Crusaders 39-24 in their semi-final.

The Bulls also beat the Stormers by 25-17 to claim their third Super 14 trophy in their historic final at the Orlando Stadium.

South Africa beat Italy 29-13 in Witbank in June 2010.

On 26 June 2010, in East London, they took to a 55-11 victory over Italy to complete a 2-0 series victory. A week earlier (19 June), in Witbank, the Boks triumphed 29-10.

Preceding that was a 42-17 victory over Six Nations champions, France, in Cape Town.

In their first match of the international season, a week earlier (5 June 2010), in Cardiff, the Boks defeated a resilient Wales by 34 points to 31.

After winning the Boston Marathon for a record ninth time in April 2010, South African wheelchair racing star Ernst van Dyk had achieved more victories in the world-famous marathon, first contested in 1897, than anyone in any racing category.



After four successive defeats in 2010's Vodacom Tri-Nations, the Springboks came back to their winning ways.

In August 2010, they beat the Wallabies by 44-31 at Loftus Versfeld – a fitting way to celebrate Victor Matfield's 100th test for South Africa.

In November 2010, the Springboks started off their tour with a 23-21 triumph against Ireland in Dublin.

The Springboks defeated Wales 29-25 in Cardiff in November 2010.

In November 2010, the Springboks dominated England at Twickenham to score their seventh consecutive victory over the English by 21 points to 11.

Soccer

South Africa's World Cup training camp in South America, as part of the country's preparation for the FIFA World Cup, paid off in April 2010 when Bafana Bafana drew 1-1 with Paraguay in Asuncion.

In April 2010, World Cup hosts South Africa defeated non-qualifiers Jamaica 2-0 in a friendly at Kickers Offenbach Stadium in Berlin, Germany.

In May 2010, Bafana Bafana celebrated the official opening of the Mbombela Stadium in Nelspruit by beating Thailand 4-0.

Bafana Bafana drew 1-1 against Bulgaria in May 2010 at the Orlando Stadium. In the same month, Bafana Bafana beat Colombia 2-1 at Soccer City Stadium.

Bafana Bafana recorded their biggest international win yet when they beat Guatemala 5-0 at the Peter Mokaba Stadium in Polokwane in May 2010.

In June 2010, Bafana Bafana continued their winning streak by beating 36th ranked Denmark 1-0 at the Lucas Moripe Stadium in Atteridgeville.

South Africa's national team raised their game in the opening match of the 2010 FIFA World Cup™ on 11 June 2010 at Johannesburg's Soccer City Stadium, holding a Mexican side placed far above them in the international rankings to a 1-1 draw – with Siphwe Tshabalala scoring the first goal of the tournament.

Aaron Mokoena's services to football and charity were recognised when he received the Freedom of the City of London in November 2010.



Pocket Guide to South Africa 2010/11

SPORT & RECREATION

Highlights of South Africa's performance in the 2010 Commonwealth Games in New Delhi, India



- Chad Le Clos won his second gold medal in the men's 400 m individual medley.
- Natalie du Toit won South Africa's second gold of the Commonwealth Games in her last race as an S9 freestyle swimmer. She finished first in the women's 400-m freestyle. Du Toit also won her third gold medal of the games when she recorded a victory in the women's S9 100-m butterfly.
- Le Clos also won a second gold after winning the men's 400-m individual medley, setting a new games record of 4:13:25.
- Cameron van der Burgh lowered the Commonwealth Games 100-m breaststroke record for the third time, holding off the former and world-record holder for gold. The 22-year-old touched first in 1:00,10. South Africa's world record holder also won the men's 50-m breaststroke, adding a second gold to his 100-m title. He swam a good race in the final of the men's 50-m breaststroke to finish 27,18 seconds ahead of Australia's Brenton Rickard.
- Sunette Viljoen registered a Commonwealth record distance of 62,34 m to take victory in the women's javelin.
- Chris Harmse won gold in the men's hammer throw.
- In lawn bowls, the women's triples team Susan Nel, Susanna Steyn and Tracy-Lee Botha lifted gold with a win over Australia. The men's trips combination of Gidion Vermeulen, Johan Du Plessis and Wayne Perry dominated Australia to win gold.
- Team South Africa finished fifth in the overall medal standings at the 2010 Commonwealth Games in New Delhi, capturing 33 medals in total, including 12 golds, 11 silver medals and 10 bronze medals.

Bafana Bafana bowed out of the 2010 FIFA World Cup™ with heads held high in Bloemfontein on 22 June 2010.

Katlego Mphela scored in the 42nd minute of a friendly match to hand South Africa a 1-0 victory over World Cup quarter-finalists Ghana at the FNB Stadium, Johannesburg, in August 2010.

In the same month, Bafana Bafana beat Niger 2-0 in their opening 2012 African Nations Cup Group G Qualifier played at the Mbombela Stadium.

Banyana Banyana got their Confederation of African Football (CAF) African Women's Championships campaign off to a winning start when they beat Tanzania 2-1 at Sinaba Stadium in Daveyton, Johannesburg, in November 2010.

In November 2010, Banyana Banyana beat Mali 4-0 to get into the 2010 CAF African Women's Championship semi-finals.

In November 2010, Nigeria was crowned CAF African Women's Championship winners following a 4-2 victory over defending champs Equatorial Guinea, while South Africa won the play-off for third place, beating Cameroon 2-0.

Surfing

South African big-wave surfer Grant "Twiggy" Baker took top honours at the Ride of the Year at the Billabong XXL Global Big Wave Awards. The award was presented at a glittering function in Anaheim, California, in April 2010.

Baker pocketed US\$50 000 for his ride on an enormous wave, which he paddled into during the Maverick's Surf Contest at Half Moon Bay in Northern California in February 2010.

In April 2010, Royden Bryson claimed victory in the O'Neill Coldwater Classic Six-Star Event in freezing cold conditions in Thurso, Scotland.

In July 2010, 22-year-old surfer Jordy Smith made history by becoming the third South African winner of the Mr Price Pro Ballito, a result that lifted him into number one spot in the Association of Surfing Professionals (ASP) World Rankings.

In the same month, he claimed his maiden ASP elite victory at the Billabong Pro Jeffreys Bay.

In September 2010, Team South Africa finished second to Australia and picked up six medals – three gold, one silver and two bronze – at the 2010 International Surfing Association (ISA) World Masters Surfing Championships at Santa Catalina in Panama. Heather Clark, in the women's Masters class, and Chris Knutsen, in the Grand Kahunas, successfully defended their titles, while Masters' competitor Andrew Banks won his first ISA World title.

In October 2010, South African batsman AB de Villiers was named the International Cricket Council's One-Day International (ODI) Player of the Year at a ceremony in Bangalore, India.

De Villiers, then the top ranked one-day batsman in the world, beat off tough competition from India's Sachin Tendulkar and the Australia duo of Shane Watson and Ryan Harris to take the prestigious award.

During the 12-month voting period to August, De Villiers played 16 ODIs and scored 855 runs at an average of 71.25. In that time, he hit four centuries and two fifties. He also kept wicket four times for the Proteas, playing a hand in five dismissals, and helped his side to victory in 10 of the 16 matches in which he played.



SPORT & RECREATION

Brothers Andre and David Malherbe earned bronze in the Grand Masters and Kahunas respectively. Durban's Chris Knutsen won his second successive Grand Kahunas (over-50) ISA world title and his third gold medal overall after winning the Kahunas division in the 2007 edition in Puerto Rico.

Smith finished runner-up to nine-time ASP world champion Kelly Slater after a matchup between the ASP world numbers one and two in the final of the Rip Curl Pro Portugal in October 2010.

Swimming

Kevin Paul smashed the 400-m individual medley world record on his first attempt at the German Championships in Berlin in June 2010.

In June 2010, Chad Le Clos clocked 4:20,23 for the eight lengths of the pool at the Mare Nostrum in Barcelona, Spain. The silver medal was Le Clos' second of the meet after winning bronze two days earlier in the 200-m butterfly.

Le Clos continued to build his reputation in global swimming as he won gold in June 2010, in Pescara at the Sette Colli. He won the men's 200-m butterfly in 1:58,63.

In August 2010, Natalie du Toit clocked two world records at the South Africa Short-Course Championships in Pietermaritzburg in KwaZulu-Natal, first breaking the three-year-old 100-m freestyle mark in the morning heats and going even faster in the final later in the day. In total, she finished the four-day gala with eight records.

Du Toit was the star for Team South Africa at the International Paralympic Committee's Swimming World Championships in Eindhoven, the Netherlands, in August 2010, claiming six gold medals, one silver and one bronze.

Du Toit ended on a high by dominating the opposition in the 5-km open water swim. She completed the event in one hour and 22 seconds, finishing a massive six minutes and 26 seconds ahead of second-placed Elodie Lorandi of France.

In September 2010, the 10th Senior African Swimming Championships concluded well for South Africa, winning 27 golds, 16 silvers and 16 bronze medals to become the clear winners of the championships in Casablanca, Morocco.

In October 2010, Roland Schoeman claimed two gold medals on the first day of the Fina/Arena Swimming World Cup in Tokyo. He clocked 26,42 in the 50-m breaststroke. He later clocked 22,56 in the 50-m butterfly.



Later in the same month, South African swimmers performed well at the Fina/Arena Swimming World Cup in Singapore, following on their success at the first leg in Beijing.

Cameron van der Burgh won the 50-m medley ahead of second-placed Roland Schoeman. He followed that up with another victory in the 100-m.

Van der Burgh won two gold medals at the Fina/Arena Swimming World Cup at the National Aquatic Centre “Water Cube” in Beijing. He captured the 50-m breaststroke, with Schoeman second. Van der Burgh also scored a victory in the 100 m.

Schoeman won the 50-m butterfly, and also took victory in the 50-m freestyle, an event in which he is the world record holder, in 21,47.

Lyndon Ferns was placed fourth in the 50-m freestyle, but won the 100-m freestyle. Ferns was also placed fourth in the 100-m butterfly.

Darian Townsend won the 100-m individual medley in 53,27 seconds. He won another title in the 200-m freestyle. Townsend also picked up a bronze medal in the 100-m freestyle. George du Rand finished second to world-record holder Arkady Vyatchanin in the 200-m backstroke.

In November 2010, Schoeman claimed three wins at the Fina/Arena Swimming World Cup in Berlin. He raced to victory in the 50-m breaststroke and butterfly on the opening day, winning the breaststroke in a time of 26,09 seconds.

In November 2010, Townsend and Schoeman finished second and third respectively in the final standings after the completion of the Fina/Arena Swimming World Cup in Stockholm, Sweden.





READING LIST



READING LIST

The land and its people

- Bonner, PL & Nieftagodien, N. 2008. *Alexandra: a history*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
- Brodie, N (ed). 2008. *The Joburg book*. Northlands: Pan Macmillan South Africa.
- Denis, P & Ntsimane, R. 2008. *Oral history in a wounded country: interactive interviewing in South Africa*. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press.
- Forum for Religious Dialogue. Symposium. University of South Africa (Unisa). 2008. *The legacy of Stephen Bantu Biko: theological challenges*. CW du Toit (ed). Pretoria: Unisa.
- Hewitt, R. 2008. *Structure, meaning & ritual in the narratives of the southern San*. 2nd ed. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
- Jensen, S. 2008. *Gangs, politics, & dignity in Cape Town*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
- Marindo, R, Groenewald, C & Gaisie, S (eds). 2008. *The state of the population in the Western Cape Province*. Cape Town: Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC) Press.
- Martin, J. 2008. *A millimetre of dust: visiting ancestral sites*. Cape Town: Kwela Books.
- Motlhabi, MBG. 2008. *African theology/black theology in South Africa: looking back, moving on*. Pretoria: Unisa.
- Murray, MJ. 2008. *Taming the disorderly: the spatial landscape of Johannesburg after apartheid*. Ithaca: Cornell University Press.
- Nuttall, S & Mbembe, A (eds). 2008. *Johannesburg: the elusive metropolis*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
- Park, YJ. 2008. *A matter of honour: being Chinese in South Africa*. Auckland Park: Jacana Media.
- Pollak, JB. 2009. *The Kasrils affair: Jews and minority politics in post-apartheid South Africa*. Cape Town: University of Cape Town (UCT) Press.
- Religion and spirituality in South Africa: new perspectives*. 2009. Scottsville: KwaZulu-Natal Press.
- Ward, C. 2009. *South Africa*. London: Wayland.

History

- Berger, I. 2009. *South Africa in world history*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Butler, A. 2009. *Contemporary South Africa*. Basingstoke: Palgrave Macmillan.
- Dowden, R. 2009. *Africa: altered states, ordinary miracles*. New York: Public Affairs.
- Doxtader, E. 2009. *With faith in the works of words: the beginnings of reconciliation in South Africa, 1985 – 1995*. East Lansing: Michigan State University Press.



- Gevisser, M. 2009. *A legacy of liberation: Thabo Mbeki and the future of the South African dream*. New York: Palgrave Macmillan.
- Hamilton, C, Mbenga, BK & Ross, R (eds). 2010. *The Cambridge history of South Africa*. New York: Cambridge University Press.
- Huigen, S. 2009. *Knowledge and colonialism: eighteenth century travellers in South Africa*. Leiden: Brill.
- Jeffery, A. 2009. *People's war: new light on the struggle for South Africa*. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball.
- Johnson, RW. 2009. *South Africa's brave new world: the beloved country since the end of apartheid*. London: Allen Lane.
- Lapierre, D. 2009. *A rainbow in the night: the tumultuous birth of South Africa*. Cambridge, MA: Da Capo Press.
- Limb, P. 2010. *The ANC's early years: nation, class and place in South Africa before 1940*. Pretoria: Unisa Press.
- Russell, A. 2009. *After Mandela: the battle for the soul of South Africa*. London: Hutchinson.
- Russell, A. 2009. *Bring me my machine gun: the battle for the soul of South Africa from Mandela to Zuma*. New York: Public Affairs.
- Sparks, AH. 2009. *Beyond the miracle: inside the new South Africa*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press.
- Sparks, AH. 2009. *First drafts: South African history in the making*. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball.
- Wilson, F. 2009. *Dinosaurs, diamonds and democracy: a short, short history of South Africa*. 2009. Roggebaai: Umuzi.
- Zapiro. 2009. *The Mandela files*. Cape Town: Double Storey.

Agriculture, forestry and fisheries

- Abstract of Agricultural Statistics*. Pretoria: Department of Agriculture, Directorate: Agricultural Information Services, annually.
- Binswanger-Mkhize, HP, Bourguignon, C & Van den Brink, R (eds). 2009. *Agricultural land redistribution: toward greater consensus*. Washington, DC: World Bank.
- Economic Review of South African Agriculture*. Pretoria: Department of Agriculture, annually.
- Hall, R (ed). 2009. *Another countryside? Policy options for land and agrarian reform in South Africa*. Bellville: PLAAS, School of Government, University of the Western Cape.
- Investment, Farming and Agribusiness South Africa*. Johannesburg: Trade Edge, annually.
- Market risk, water management and the multiplier effects of irrigation agriculture with reference to the Northern Cape*. 2008. Gezina: Water Research Commission (WRC).
- The National Agricultural directory = Die nasionale landbougid*. 2009. South Africa: Rainbow SA.

READING LIST

Wenhold, F. 2008. *Nutritional status of South Africans: links to agriculture and water*. Gezina: WRC.

Arts and culture

Brink, Y. 2008. *They came to stay: discovering meaning in the 18th century Cape country dwelling*. Stellenbosch: SUN Press.

Coplan, DB. 2008. *In township tonight! South Africa's black city music and theatre*. Chicago, Ill: University of Chicago Press.

Dubin, SC. 2009. *Mounting Queen Victoria: curating cultural change in South Africa*. Auckland Park: Jacana Media.

Jaji, S. 2008. *An aspect of the South African experience in literature and reading*. Ibadan: HEBN Publishers.

Kombuis, K. 2009. *Short drive to freedom: a personal perspective on the Afrikaans rock rebellion*. Cape Town: Human & Rosseau.

Kumalo, A. 2009. *Through my lens: a photographic memoir*. Cape Town: Tafelberg.

L'atelier: Absa L'Atelier 2009. 2009. [South Africa]: Absa.

Mojapelo, M. 2008. *Beyond memory: recording the history, moments and memories of South African music*. Somerset West: African Minds.

Muller, CA. 2008. *Focus: music of South Africa*. New York: Routledge.

Newbury, D. 2009. *Defiant images: photography and apartheid South Africa*. Pretoria: Unisa Press.

Ngatane, E. 2009. *Ephraim Ngatane: a setting apart*. Johannesburg: Blank Books.

Peffer, J. 2009. *Art and the end of apartheid*. Minneapolis: University of Minneapolis Press.

Watterson, L (ed). 2009. *Standard Bank Young Artist Awards, 25 years*. Randburg: DeskLink Media.

Williamson, S. 2009. *South African art now*. Jacana Media

Zapiro. 2009. *Don't mess with the president's head: cartoons from the Mail & Guardian, Sunday Times and The Times*. Auckland Park: Jacana Media.

Communications

Andersson, M. 2010. *Intertextuality, violence and memory in Yizo Yizo: youth TV drama*. Pretoria: Unisa Press.

Cameron-Dow, J. 2007. *A newspaper history of South Africa*. Wynberg: Don Nelson Publishers.

Cole, CM. 2010. *Performing South Africa's Truth Commission: stages of transition*. Bloomington: Indiana University Press.

Gibson, R. 2007. *Final deadline: the last days of the Rand Daily Mail*. Claremont: David Philip Pub.

- Hadland, A, Cowling, L & Tabe, BFT. 2007. *Advertising in the news: paid-for content and the South African print media*. Cape Town: HSRC Press.
- Hadland, A, Aldridge, M & Ogada, J. 2007. *Revisioning television: policy, strategy and models for the sustainable development of community television in South Africa*. Cape Town: HSRC Press.
- Krabill, R. 2010. *Starring Mandela and Cosby: media and the end(s) of apartheid*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press.
- Maseko, L (ed). 2007. *Sowetan: celebrating 25 years of the soul truth*. Johannesburg: *The Sowetan*.
- Meeting their mandates? A critical analysis of South African media statutory bodies*. 2007. Newlands: Media Programme of Open Society Foundation for South Africa.
- Paging through history: 150 years with the Cape Argus: 1857 – 2007*. 2007. Johannesburg: Jonanthan Ball.
- Van der Merwe, D. 2008. *Information and communications technology law*. Durban: LexisNexis.

Economy

- Descriptive accounting*. 2009. Durban: LexisNexis.
- Dyubhele, N. 2008. *Isigama seqoqoqosho: economic terms and concepts made simple*. Pretoria: Van Schaik Publishers.
- Gordon-Davis, L. 2008. *Legal requirements for hospitality business*. 2nd ed. Wetton, Cape Town: Juta.
- Grobbelaar, N & Besada, H (eds). 2008. *Unlocking Africa's potential: the role of corporate South Africa in strengthening Africa's private sector*. Johannesburg: South African Institute of International Affairs.
- Kraak, A (ed). 2009. *Sectors & skills: the need for policy alignment*. Cape Town: HSRC Press.
- Leon, J (comp ed). 2009. *Gaffney's business contacts in South Africa 2009: the Chambers of Commerce & Industries yearbook & buyer's guide*. Johannesburg: Gaffney Group.
- Nel, R. 2009. *Puppets or people: people and organisational development: an integrated approach*. Cape Town: Juta.
- Scerri, M. 2009. *The evolution of the South African system of innovation since 1916*. Newcastle: Cambridge Scholars.
- South African banking sector analysis*. 2008. Delhi: RNCOS.
- The South African business forecast report: includes 10-year forecasts to end-2018*. London: Business Monitor.
- Turok, B. 2008. *From the Freedom Charter to Polokwane: the evolution of ANC economic policy*. Cape Town: New Agenda.
- Turok, B (ed). 2008. *Wealth doesn't trickle down: the case for a developmental state in South Africa*. Cape Town: New Agenda.
- South African Journal of Social and Economic Policy*.

READING LIST

Zumanomics: which way to shared prosperity in South Africa?: challenges for a new government. 2009. Auckland Park: Jacana Media.

Education

Aspects of education law. 2009. Pretoria: Van Schaik.

Bloch, G. 2009. *The toxic mix: what's wrong with South Africa's schools and how to fix it.* Cape Town: Tafelberg.

Chisholm, L. 2009. *An overview of research, policy and practice in teacher supply and demand 1994 – 2008.* Cape Town: HSRC Press.

Curriculum studies in South Africa: intellectual histories & present circumstances. 2010. New York: Palgrave Macmillan.

Evans, R et al. 2009. *Classroom literacies: understanding your multilingual classroom.* Pretoria: Van Schaik Publishers.

Higher education in South Africa: a scholarly look behind the scenes. 2009. Stellenbosch: Sun Media.

Jansen, JD. 2009. *Knowledge in the blood: confronting race and the apartheid past.* Cape Town: UCT Press.

Joubert, HJ. 2009. *The law of education in South Africa.* Pretoria: Van Schaik Publishers.

Naidu, A et al. 2008. *Education management and leadership: a South African perspective.* Cape Town: Oxford University Press South Africa.

Paterson, A. 2009. *Teacher graduate production in South Africa.* Cape Town: HSRC Press.

Rossouw, JP. 2010. *Labour relations education: a South African perspective.* 2010. Pretoria: Van Schaik Publishers.

Student retention & graduate destination: higher education & labour market access & success. 2010. Cape Town: HSRC Press.

Thomas, CC. 2008. *Cocktails of liberty: contours of the 1976 Western Cape student uprising.* Pretoria: South African History Online.

Towards gender equality: South African schools during the HIV and AIDS epidemic. 2009. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press.

Van Wyk, N. 2009. *Organising parent involvement in SA schools.* Cape Town: Tafelberg.

Energy

Bond, P, Dada, R & Erion, G (eds). 2009. *Climate change, carbon trading and civil society: negative returns on South African investments.* Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press.

Energy efficiency made simple. 2008. Bedfordview: Crown Publications.

Scoping study on water use of crops/trees for biofuels in South Africa: report to the Water Research Commission. Gezina: WRC.

Water conservation through energy conservation. 2007. Gezina: WRC.

Winkler, H. 2009. *Cleaner energy, cooler climate: developing sustainable energy solutions for South Africa.* Cape Town: HSRC Press.

Environmental affairs

Aucamp, P.J. 2009. *Environmental impact assessment: a practical guide for the discerning practitioner.* Pretoria: Van Schaik Publishers.

Butchart, D. 2009. *Wildlife of South Africa: a photographic guide.* Cape Town: Struik Nature.

De Villiers, B. 2008. *People and parks: sharing the benefits.* Johannesburg: Konrad Adenauer Stiftung.

Du Plessis, A. 2008. *Fulfilment of South Africa's constitutional environmental right in the local government sphere.* Nijmegen: Wolf Legal.

Emmett, M. 2010. *Game ranger in your backpack: all-in-one interpretative guide to the Lowveld.* Pretoria: Briza.

Environmental compliance and enforcement in South Africa: legal perspectives. 2009. Cape Town: Juta.

Environmental management in South Africa. 2009. Cape Town: Juta.

Guyot, S. 2008. *Zulu shores, South Africa: green disputes in black and white.* Saarbrücken: VDM, Verlag Dr. Müller.

McCracken, D.P. 2008. *Saving the Zululand wilderness: an early struggle for nature conservation.* Auckland Park: Jacana Media.

Pienaar, A. 2009. *The Griqua apprentice: ancient healing arts of the Karoo.* Roggebaai: Umuzi.

Selley, R. 2009. *West of the moon: early Zululand and a game ranger at war in Rhodesia.* Johannesburg: 30° South Publishers.

Slingsby, P. 2009. *T.P. Stokoe, the man, the myths, the flowers.* Cape Town: Baardskeerder.

South Africa. 2009. *National Environmental Management Act and regulations 107 of 1998; Environment Conservation Act and regulations 73 of 1989.* Edited by Juta's statutes editors. Cape Town: Juta.

South African environmental law through the cases. 2009. Durban: LexisNexis.

Thomas, V, Moll, E & Grant, R. 2008. *Tree spotting: Cape: from coast to Kalahari.* Johannesburg: Jacana Media.

READING LIST

Finance

- Botha, M et al. 2009. *South African financial planning handbook, 2009*. Durban: LexisNexis.
- Engels, R (ed). 2009. *Financial adviser's handbook, 2009*. Durban: LexisNexis.
- A glossary of financial planning law*. 2009. Durban: LexisNexis.
- Green, P. 2008. *Choice, not fate: the life and times of Trevor Manuel*. Johannesburg: Penguin Books.
- Green, P. 2010. *Trevor Manuel*. Cape Town: Maskew Miller Longman.
- Kriek, JH, Beekman, E & Els, G. 2008. *Fundamentals of finance: a practical guide to the world of finance*. 4th ed. Durban: LexisNexis Butterworths.
- Marx, GL & Hanekom, K (eds). *The manual on South African retirement funds and other employee benefits*. 2008 ed. Durban: LexisNexis.
- Motlatsi, J & Godsell, B. 2008. *Do it! Every South African's guide to making a difference*. Auckland Park: Jacana Media.
- Parliament, the budget and poverty in South Africa: a shift in power*. 2009. Pretoria: Idasa.
- Pauw, JC et al. 2009. *Managing public money: systems from the South*. Sandton: Heinemann.
- South Africa. 2008. *Local Government: Municipal Finance Management Act & regulations, 56 of 2003*. 2nd ed. Edited by Juta's statutes editors. Cape Town: Juta Law.
- South Africa. 2008. *SAICA legislation handbook, 2008/2009, South African Institute of Chartered Accountants*. Durban: LexisNexis.
- South Africa. 2009. *Public Finance Management Act, 1 of 1999 & regulations*. Cape Town: Juta Law.
- The South African financial planning handbook 2010*. 2009. Durban: LexisNexis.
- Van Zyl, C et al (eds). 2009. *Understanding South African financial markets*. 3rd ed. Pretoria: Van Schaik Publishers.

Government system

- Badran, AD. 2010. *Zionist Israel and apartheid South Africa: civil society and peace building in ethic-national states*. London: Routledge.
- Boehmer, E. 2009. *Nelson Mandela: a very short introduction*. New York: Sterling.
- Buhlungu, S. 2010. *A paradox of victory: Cosatu and the democratic transformation in South Africa*. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press.

- Cole, CM. 2010. *Performing South Africa's Truth Commission: stages of transition*. Bloomington: Indiana University.
- Du Preez, M. 2009. *The world according to Julius Malema*. Cape Town: Kwela Books.
- Feinstein, A. 2009. *After the party: a personal and political journey inside the ANC*. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball.
- Goodman, T. 2009. *Staging solidarity: truth and reconciliation in a new South Africa*. Boulder, CO: Paradigm Publishers.
- Gordin, J. 2009. *Zuma: a biography*. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball.
- Green, P. 2010. *Trevor Manuel*. Cape Town: Maskew Miller Longman.
- Intergroup relations in post apartheid South Africa: change, and obstacles to change*. 2010. Hoboken, NJ: Wiley.
- Jeffery, A. 2010. *Chasing the rainbow: South Africa's move from Mandela to Zuma*. Johannesburg: South African Institute for Race Relations.
- Landau, P. 2010. *Popular politics in the history of South Africa, 1400 – 1948*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Liebenberg, S. 2010. *Socio-economic rights: adjudication under a transformative constitution*. Claremont: Juta.
- The Mail&Guardian A-Z of South African politics: the essential handbook*. 2009. Auckland Park: Jacana Media.
- Marais, H. 2010. *Limits to change: new views on the political economy of South Africa's transition*. London: Zed Books.
- Mangu, X. 2009. *The democratic moment: South Africa's prospects under Jacob Zuma*. Auckland Park: Jacana Media.
- Paul, SA. 2009. *The Ubuntu god: deconstructing a South African narrative of oppression*. Eugene, OR: Pickwick Publications.
- Southall, R & Daniel, J (eds). 2009. *Zunami! The South African elections of 2009*. Auckland Park: Jacana Media.
- Testing democracy: which way is South Africa going?* 2010. Cape Town: Idasa.
- Van Zyl Slabbert: the passion for reason: essays in honour of an Afrikaner African*. 2010. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball.
- The Zuma administration: critical challenges*. 2010. Cape Town: HSRC Press.

Health

- Booyens, SW (ed). 2008. *Introduction to health services management*. 3rd rev ed. Cape Town: Juta.
- Chirambo, K & Steyn, J. 2009. *AIDS and local government in South Africa: examining the impact of an epidemic on ward councillors*. Pretoria: Idasa.

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2010/11

READING LIST

- Chirando, K. 2008. *The political cost of AIDS in Africa: an overview*. Cape Town: Idasa.
- Cullinan, K & Thom, A (eds). 2009. *The virus, vitamins and vegetables: the South African HIV/AIDS mystery*. Auckland Park: Jacana Media.
- De Villiers, JC. 2008. *Healers, helpers and hospitals*. Pretoria: Protea Book House.
- Flint, KE. 2008. *Healing traditions: African medicine, cultural exchange, and competition in South Africa, 1820 – 1948*. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press.
- HIV/AIDS, TB and nutrition: scientific inquiry into the nutritional influences on human immunity with special reference to HIV infection and active TB in South Africa*. Pretoria: Academy of Science of South Africa.
- Isaacs, M & Hara, M. 2008. *Mainstreaming of HIV and AIDS into South African fisheries policy*. Bellville: Programme for Land and Agrarian Studies.
- Kalichman, SC. 2009. *Denying AIDS: conspiracy theories, pseudoscience, and human tragedy*. New York: Copernicus Books.
- Lawson, L. 2008. *Side effects: the story of AIDS in South Africa*. Cape Town: Double Storey.
- Löffler, A. 2008. *HIV/AIDS and the power of decision making: a gender study in a rural township in South Africa*. Saarbrücken: VDM Verlag Dr. Müller.
- Okorafor, OA. 2010. *Primary healthcare spending: striving for equity under fiscal federalism*. Cape Town: UCT Press.
- Pearmain, DL. 2008. *The law of medical schemes in South Africa*. Cape Town: Juta.
- The Principles and practice of nursing and health care 2010*. Pretoria: Van Schaik.
- Rispel, L, Molomo, B & Dumela, S. 2008. *South African case study on social exclusion*. Cape Town: HSRC Press.

Human settlements

- Berrisford, S (ed). 2008. *In search of land and housing in the new South Africa: the case of EtheMbaletu*. [e-book]. Washington, DC: World Bank.
- Smith, CP. 2009. *Eviction and rental claims: a practical guide*. Durban: LexisNexis.
- Tshitereke, C. 2009. *There shall be houses, security and comfort*. Pretoria: Institute for Security Studies.

International relations and cooperation

- Abegunrin, O. 2009. *Africa in global politics in the twenty-first century: a pan-African perspective*. Basingstoke: Palgrave Macmillan.

- Akokpari, J (eds). 2008. *The African Union and its institutions*. Johannesburg: Fanele.
- Kagwanja, P & Kondlo, K (eds). 2009. *State of the nation: South Africa 2008*. Pretoria: HSRC Press.
- Research and Information System for Developing Countries. 2008. *Trinity of the South: potential of India-Brazil-South Africa (IBSA) partnership*. New Delhi: Academic Foundation.
- Thomas, A. 2008. *U.S. foreign policy towards apartheid South Africa, 1948 – 1994: conflict of interests*. New York: Palgrave Macmillan.
- Two countries one dream: the challenges of democratic consolidation in Kenya and South Africa*. 2009. Rosebank: KMM Review Pub.

Justice and correctional services

- Altbeker, A. 2010. *Fruit of a poisoned tree: a true story of murder and the miscarriage of justice*. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball.
- Bhauna, H. 2010. *The survivor's guide for candidate attorneys*. Claremont: Juta.
- Davis, D. 2009. *Precedent & possibility: the (ab)use of law in South Africa*. Cape Town: Double Storey.
- Elsdon, AD. 2009. *The tall assassin: the darkest political murders of the old South Africa*. Roggebaai: Umuzi.
- Gibson, JL. 2009. *Overcoming historical land injustices in South Africa*. New York: Cambridge University Press.
- A Glossary of financial planning law*. 2009. Durban: LexisNexis.
- Ismail, AAM. 2009. *Understanding land tenure law: commentary and legislation*. Cape Town: Juta.
- Meierhenrich, J. 2008. *The legacies of law: long-run consequences of legal development in South Africa, 1652 – 2000*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Mofokeng, LL. 2009. *Legal pluralism in South Africa: aspects of African customary, Muslim and Hindu family law*. Hatfield, Pretoria: Van Schaik.
- Promotion of Equality and Prevention of Unfair Discrimination Act 4 of 2000*. 2010. Claremont: Juta.
- SAICA legislation handbook, 2008/2009*. 2008. Durban: LexisNexis.
- Skelton, A & Tshehla, B. 2008. *Child justice in South Africa*. Pretoria: Institute for Security Studies.
- Sloth-Nielsen, J & Du Toit, Z (eds). 2008. *Trials and tribulations, trends and triumphs: developments in international, African and South African child and family law*. Cape Town: Juta Law.
- South Africa. 2009. *Public Finance Management Act, 1 of 1999 & regulations*. Cape Town: Juta Law.

READING LIST

Mineral resources

- Bond, P, Dada, R & Erion, G (eds). 2009. *Climate change, carbon trading and civil society: negative returns on South African investments*. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press.
- Machens, EW. 2009. *Platinum, gold and diamonds: the adventure of Hans Merensky's discoveries*. Pretoria: Protea Book House.
- Masilo, P & Rautenbach, G. 2008. *Commentary on the Mine Health and Safety Act and regulations*. Cape Town: Juta.
- Mazema, HK et al. 2008. *A pilot study into available upstream cleaner production technologies for the petroleum refining industry to meet the requirements of the waste discharge charge system*. Gezina: WRC.
- Rainmakers & potstirrers. 2008. Sandton: Miningmx.
- The South African mining industry's sustainability and transformation report 2007. [2008]. Marshalltown: Chamber of Mines of South Africa.
- Winkler, H. 2009. *Cleaner energy, cooler climate: developing sustainable energy solutions for South Africa*. Cape Town: HSRC Press.

Police, defence and intelligence

- Blake, C. 2009. *Troepie: from call-up to camps*. Cape Town: Zebra Press.
- Elsdon, AD. 2009. *The tall assassin: the darkest political murders of the old South Africa*. Roggebaai: Umuzi.
- Faull, A. 2008. *City Blues: corruption and corruption management in South Africa's Metropolitan Police Departments*. Pretoria: Institute for Security Studies.
- Geldenhuys, J. 2009. *At the front: a general's account of South Africa's border war*. Jeppestown: Jonathan Ball.
- Jensen, S. 2008. *Gangs, politics & dignity in Cape Town*. Oxford: James Currey.
- Kirsten, A. 2008. *A nation without guns: the story of gun-free South Africa*. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press.
- Korff, G. 2009. *19 with a bullet: a South African paratrooper in Angola*. Johannesburg: 30° South Publishers.
- Lord, D. 2008. *From fledgling to eagle: the South African Airforce during the Border War*. Johannesburg: 30° South Publishers.
- Ngculu, J. 2009. *The honour to serve: recollections of an Umkhonto soldier*. Claremont: David Philip.
- Nicol, M. 2010. *Killer country*. Cape Town: Umuzi.
- Singh, A-M. 2008. *Policing and crime control in post-apartheid South Africa*. Aldershot, UK: Ashgate.
- Steinberg, J. 2008. *Thin blue: the unwritten rules of policing South Africa*. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball with Open Society Foundation for South Africa.

- To spy or not to spy?: intelligence and democracy in South Africa.* 2009. Pretoria: Institute for Security Studies.
- Volker, WV. 2010. *Army signals in South Africa: the story of the South African Corps of Signals and its antecedents.* Pretoria: Veritas Books.

Rural development and land reform

- Alden, C. 2009. *Land, liberation and compromise in Southern Africa.* Basingstoke: Palgrave Macmillan.
- Bloom, J. 2009. *Rising tide: how freedom of responsibility uplifts everyone.* South Africa: SA Institute of Race Relations.
- De Villiers, B. 2008. *Land reform: a commentary.* Johannesburg: Konrad Adenauer Stiftung.
- De Villiers, B. 2008. *People and parks: sharing the benefits.* Johannesburg: Konrad Adenauer Stiftung.
- Gibson, JL. 2009. *Overcoming historical injustices: land reconciliation in South Africa.* Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Hall, R (ed). 2009. *Another countryside? Policy options for land and agrarian reform in South Africa.* Bellville: Plaas, School of Government, University of the Western Cape.
- Land, memory, reconstruction, and justice: perspectives on land claims in South Africa.* 2010. Athens, Ohio: Ohio University Press.
- Walker, C. 2008. *Landmarked: land claims and land restitution in South Africa.* Johannesburg: Jacana Media.
- Yanou, MA. 2009. *Dispossession and access to land in South Africa: an African perspective.* Mankon, Bamenda: Langaa Research & Publishing CIG.

Science and technology

- Huigen, S. 2009. *Knowledge and colonialism: eighteenth-century travellers in South Africa.* Leiden: Brill.
- Phahlamohlaka, J (ed). 2008. *Community-driven projects: reflections on a success story: a case study of science education and information technology in South Africa.* Pretoria: Van Schaik Publishers.
- Southern African steel construction handbook.* 2010. Johannesburg: South African Institution of Steel Construction.
- Van der Merwe, D et al. 2008. *Information and communications technology.* Durban: LexisNexis.

Social development

- Earle, N. 2008. *Social work in social change: the profession and education of social workers in South Africa.* Cape Town: HSRC Press.

READING LIST

- Erasmus, J & Breier, M (eds). 2009. *Skills shortages in South Africa: case studies of key professions*. Cape Town: HSRC Press.
- Kraak, A (ed). 2009. *Sectors & skills: the need for policy alignment*. Cape Town: HSRC Press.
- Kraak A & Press, K (eds). 2008. *Human resources development review 2008: education, employment and skills in South Africa*. Cape Town: HSRC Press.
- MacDonald, M. 2008. *Why race matters in South Africa*. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press.
- Mojapelo, JS. 2009. *The corner people of Lady Selborne*. Pretoria: Unisa Press.
- Nash, A. 2009. *The dialectical tradition in South Africa*. New York: Routledge.
- Piombo, J. 2009. *Institutions, ethnicity and political mobilization in South Africa*. New York: Palgrave Macmillan.
- The politics of service delivery*. 2009. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
- Re-imagining the social in South Africa: critique, theory and post-apartheid society*. 2009. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press.
- Robins, SL. 2008. *From revolution to rights in South Africa: social movements, NGOs & popular politics after apartheid*. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press.
- Scheub, H. 2010. *The uncoiling python: South African storytellers and resistance*. Athens: Ohio University Press.
- Reddy, V, Sandfort, T & Rispel, L (eds). 2009. *From social silence to social science: same-sex sexuality, HIV & AIDS and gender in South Africa: conference proceedings*. Cape Town: HSRC Press.
- Steyn, M & Van Zyl, M (eds). 2009. *The prize and the price: shaping sexualities in South Africa*. Cape Town: HSRC Press.

Sport and recreation

- Besong, MB. 2010. *South Africa: [Bafana, Bafana] 2010*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Black, B. 2008. *Saltwater fly-fishing in South Africa*. Cape Town: Struik.
- Dobson, P, Hamilton, T & Knight, M. 2008. *Derby Day: South African schoolboy rugby*. Editors B Hepburn, R Kemp, J Nurse. Cape Town: Laugh It Off.
- Fraser, C. 2010. *Soccer chic: soccer life the South African way*. Cape Town: Quivertree Publications.
- Frost, S. 2008. *Salt on the sails: 150 years of the Royal Natal Yacht Club*. Durban: Royal Natal Yacht Club.

- Latakgomo, J. 2010. *Mzansi magic: struggle, betrayal and glory: the story of South African soccer*. Cape Town: Tafelberg.
- Marais, J. 2008. *Great African adventures: a guide to the mother country's ultimate outdoor adventures*. Cape Town: Struik.
- Merrett, C. 2009. *Sport, space and segregation: politics and society in Pietermaritzburg*. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press.
- Morgan, P. 2008. *International Rugby Board Rugby Yearbook*. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball.
- Murray, B & Vahed, G (eds). 2009. *Empire & cricket: the South African experience, 1884 – 1914*. Pretoria: Unisa Press.
- O'Sullivan, D. 2009. *The Penguin book of South African sports trivia*. Johannesburg: Penguin Books.
- Pillay, U, Tomlinson, R & Bass, O (eds). 2009. *Development and dreams: the urban legacy of the 2010 Football World Cup*. Cape Town: HSRC Press.
- The race to transform: sport in post-apartheid South Africa*. 2010. Cape Town: HSRC Press.
- Sport versus art: a South African contest*. 2010. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
- Van der Berg, W & Burger, G. 2008. *Blue Bulls: 70 years of glory*. Johannesburg: Penguin Books.

Tourism

- Chhabra, D. 2010. *Sustainable marketing of cultural and heritage tourism*. New York: Routledge.
- George, R. 2008. *Marketing tourism in South Africa*. Cape Town: Oxford University Press Southern Africa.
- Greenwood guide to South Africa: hand-picked accommodation*. 4th ed. London: Greenwood Guides.
- Hottola, P (ed). 2009. *Tourism strategies and local responses in Southern Africa*. Wallingford, UK: Cambridge: CABI.
- Ivanovic, M. 2008. *Cultural tourism*. Cape Town: Juta.
- Keyser, H. 2009. *Developing tourism in South Africa; towards competitive destinations*. 2nd ed. Cape Town: Oxford University Press.
- Tassiopoulos, D (ed). 2008. *New tourism ventures: an entrepreneurial and managerial approach*. Cape Town: Juta.

Transport

- Louw, B. 2008. *The Gibson brothers of the Red Star Line*. Welgemoed: JBZ Louw.
- Rorke, WB. 2007. *Trek Airways: a South African adventure*. London: Athena Press.

READING LIST

- Ross, G. 2007. *The romance of Cape mountain passes*. Cape Town: New Africa Books.
- South Africa. Department of Transport. [e-resource]. *Moving South Africa: a transport strategy for 2010: report and strategy recommendations*.

Water affairs

- Berg water project: communication practices for governance and sustainability improvement*. 2010. Washington: World Bank.
- Denison, J. 2009. *Indigenous water harvesting and conservation practices: historical context, cases and implications*. Gezina: WRC.
- Haarhoff, J & Cassa, AM. 2009. *Introduction to flood hydrology*. Cape Town: Juta.
- Hemson, D. 2008. *The view from below: citizen voice and regulation in water services to the poor*. Gezina: WRC.
- Ilemobade, AA. 2009. *Assessment of the feasibility of using a dual water reticulation system in South Africa*. Gezina: WRC.
- Implications of South Africa's trade policies for water policy and water resources management*. 2008. Gezina: WRC.
- Momba, MNB. 2008. *Improving disinfection efficiency in small drinking water treatment plants*. Gezina: WRC.
- Productive use of domestic piped water for sustaining livelihoods in poor households*. Gezina: WRC.
- Review of regulatory aspects of the water services sector*. 2009. Gezina: WRC.
- Roux, DJ. 2009. *Enabling effective learning in catchment management agencies: a philosophy and strategy*. Gezina: WRC.
- Rust, U. 2009. *The impact of gender in the rural water services environment of South Africa*. Gezina: WRC.
- A scoping exercise to investigate the potential need for, and nature of, water trading in South Africa*. 2009. Gezina: WRC.
- Swartz, CD. 2009. *A planning framework to position rural water treatment in South Africa for the future*. Gezina: WRC.
- Thompson, P. 2009. *The development of a generic water safety plan for small community water supply*. Gezina: WRC.
- Upgrading existing South African filtration plants to high rate filters*. 2009. Gezina: WRC.